SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

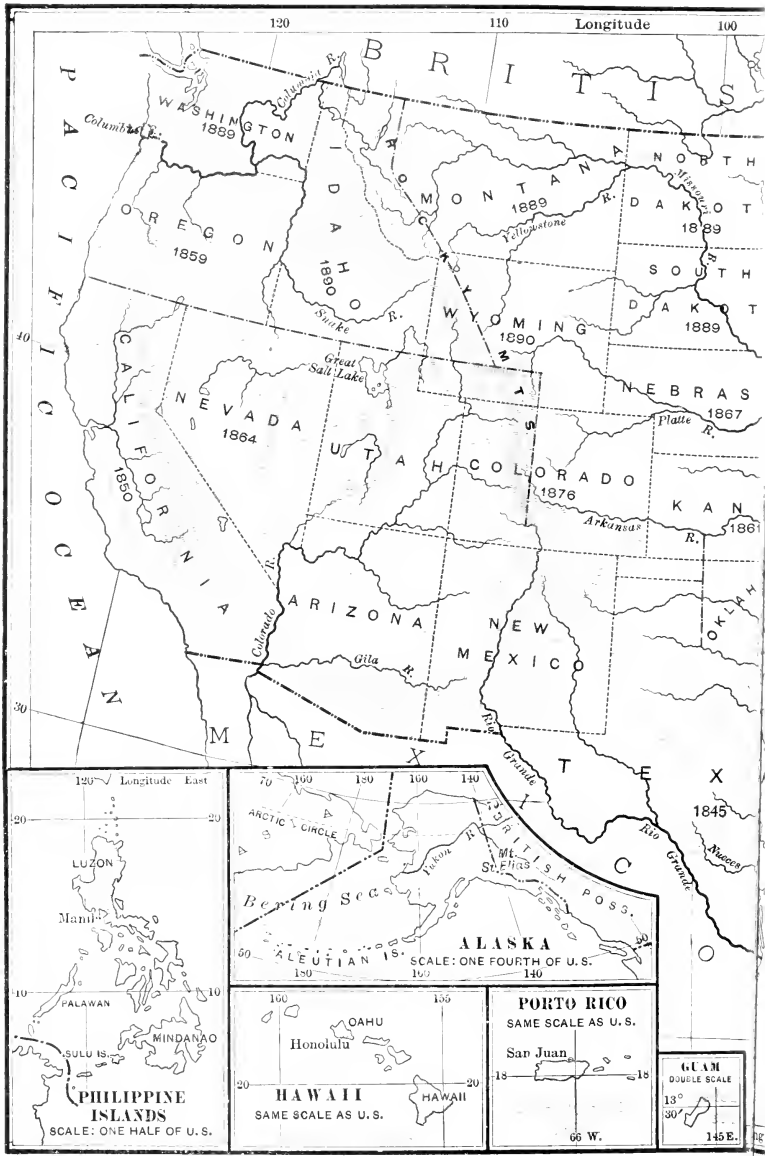
· BENZIGER · BROTHERS ·
NEW YORK· CINCINNATI · CHICAGO

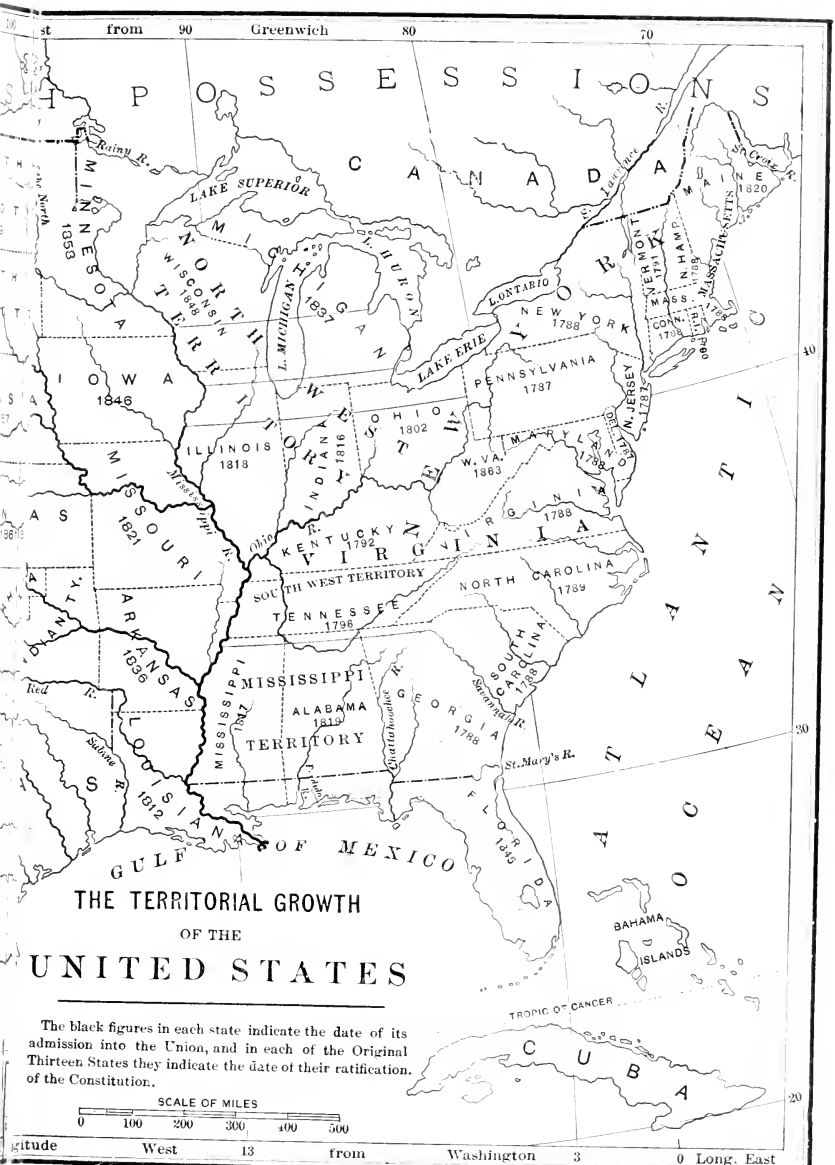
Class E178

Book .I

Copyright No. S373

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.


Longitude
120
110
100
40
30
PACIFIC OCEAN
BRITISH
WASHINGTON
1889
Columbia R.
Columbia R.
OREGON
1859
IDAHO
1890
Snake R.
MONTANA
1889
Yellowstone R.
NORTH DAKOTA
1889
Missouri R.
SOUTH DAKOTA
1889
WYOMING
1890
NEBRASKA
1867
Platte R.
Great Salt Lake
NEVADA
1864
UTAH
COLORADO
1876
CALIFORNIA
1850
Colorado R.
KANSAS
1861
Arkansas R.
OKLAHOMA
ARIZONA
NEW MEXICO
Gila R.
Rio Grande
MEXICO
TEXAS
1845
Rio Grande
Nueces
Longitude East
120
20
LUZON
Manila
PALAWAN
10
MINDANAO
SULU IS.
PHILIPPINE ISLANDS
SCALE: ONE HALF OF U.S.
ARCTIC CIRCLE
Yukon R.
Mt. St. Elias
BRITISH POSS.
Bering Sea
ALEUTIAN IS.
ALASKA
SCALE: ONE FOURTH OF U.S.
OAHU
Honolulu
HAWAII
HAWAII
SAME SCALE AS U.S.
PORTO RICO
SAME SCALE AS U.S.
San Juan
18
66 W.
GUAM
DOUBLE SCALE
13°
30'
145 E.



THE TERRITORIAL GROWTH OF THE UNITED STATES

The black figures in each state indicate the date of its admission into the Union, and in each of the Original Thirteen States they indicate the date of their ratification of the Constitution.

SCALE OF MILES

0 100 200 300 400 500

gitude West 13 from Washington 3 0 Long. East

A

SCHOOL HISTORY

OF

THE UNITED STATES

Abridged and compiled from the most reliable sources

NEW, REVISED EDITION

WITH MAPS AND MANY ILLUSTRATIONS

NEW YORK, CINCINNATI, CHICAGO

BENZIGER BROTHERS

PRINTERS TO THE HOLY APOSTOLIC SEE | PUBLISHERS OF BENZIGER'S MAGAZINE

1920

E 178
.1
.S373

Copyright, 1892, 1899, 1910, 1920, by
BENZIGER BROTHERS.

DEC 10 1920

©CLA604522

EHB 15 Dec. 1922

CONTENTS.

PART I.—DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS.

CHAPTER PAGE

I. Discovery of America—The Voyage of Columbus—The Northmen and the Irish—The Indians—Cabot's Explorations, ... 9

II. Ponce de Leon—Discovery of Florida—Garay Discovers the Mississippi—Ayllon, Gomez, Narvaez, De Soto, Coronado—The French and the Spaniards in Florida, . . . 18

III. French Explorers—Denys, Verrazzano, Cartier—Religious Changes in Europe—A French Protestant Settlement—Champlain—French Missionaries and Martyrs, . . 24

IV. Attempts to Settle Virginia—The London and the Plymouth Company—Henry Hudson, ... 34

PART II.—THE COLONIES.

V. Settlement of Virginia, ... 39

VI. The Settlement of Massachusetts, ... 45

VII. Connecticut, New Hampshire, and the United Colonies of New England, ... 49

VIII. Maryland, New Netherlands, and New Sweden, . . . 53

IX. The Continent and its Inhabitants, ... 58

X. England and France Seek to Control North America, . . 62

XI. The English Colonies under William and Mary, . . . 72

XII. Queen Anne's War—Indian Wars—Father Rale, . . 77

XIII. Intercolonial Wars—King George's War—The French and Indian Wars, ... 82

XIV. The French and Indian Wars, Continued—Canada Passes into the Hands of the English, ... 90

PART III.—WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE.

CHAPTER		PAGE
XV.	The Injustice of England Causes Her to Lose the Good Will of the Colonies,	99
XVI.	Growing Dissatisfaction in America—The Boston Tea Party—Pontiac's Rebellion—Preparing for War,	103
XVII.	War Begins—The Second Continental Congress—Bunker Hill—Boston Besieged,	107
XVIII.	Operations against Canada—Siege of Charleston—The Declaration of Independence—The Movement against New York—The Battle of Long Island,	113
XIX.	The Campaign in New Jersey—Aid from France—The British in Pennsylvania—Burgoyne's Invasion—Surrender of Burgoyne,	120
XX.	Articles of Confederation—An Alliance with France—Indian Massacres—The War in the South,	127
XXI.	The Loss of Charleston—British Outrages—Defeat of Gates—More Help from France—Arnold's Treason—Revolt in the Army—Greene in the South,	133
XXII.	The Siege of Yorktown—Surrender of Cornwallis—Peace—Independence Acknowledged—Resignation of Washington,	141

PART IV.—THE UNITED STATES.

XXIII.	The Administration of Washington and Adams,	146
XXIV.	The Administration of Jefferson and Madison,	155
XXV.	The Administration of Madison, Continued,	163
XXVI.	The Administration of Monroe and of John Quincy Adams,	167
XXVII.	The Administration of Jackson and of Van Buren,	174
XXVIII.	The Administration of Harrison, of Tyler, and of Polk,	179
XXIX.	Polk's Administration, Continued—New Mexico and California—The Administrations of Taylor, Fillmore, Pierce, and Buchanan,	187

PART V.—THE CIVIL WAR.

CHAPTER PAGE

XXX. Secession—The Confederate States—Lincoln's Inauguration—The Call for Troops—War Begins, . . 198

XXXI. The War in the West—Capture of New Orleans—The Monitor and the Merrimac, ... 205

XXXII. The Army of the Potomac—The Emancipation Proclamation—Gettysburg, ... 210

XXXIII. On the Mississippi—The Draft Riots—"Above the Clouds"—Capture of Atlanta—The March to the Sea, 215

XXXIV. Grant's Campaign—Surrender of Lee—Assassination of Lincoln, ... 220

PART VI.—RECONSTRUCTION.

XXXV. The Administration of Johnson and of Grant, . . 228

XXXVI. The Administrations of Hayes, Garfield, Arthur, Cleveland, and Harrison, and Cleveland's Second Term, ... 233

PART VII.—EXPANSION.

XXXVII. The Administration of McKinley—The War with Spain—Annexation—Assassination of McKinley . 243

XXXVIII. The Panama Canal—The Election of Roosevelt—The San Francisco Earthquake, ... 252

XXXIX. The Election of Taft—Discovery of the North Pole—Postal Banks—Mexico in Revolution—Treaties—Initiative, Referendum, and Recall—New Mexico and Arizona become States—The Presidential Election of 1912—Our Relations with Central and South America—An Extra Session of Congress—An Income Tax, ... 256

XL. The Wilson Administration—Woman Suffrage—A Protectorate and New Possessions—Mexican Troubles—A. B. C. Envoys—Villa's Raids—The

CHAPTER PAGE

World War—Our Neutrality—The Second Term of Woodrow Wilson—The Causes Which Led the United States into the World War—War—War Organization—The Yanks Are Coming!—Belleau Wood: The Aggressive—St. Quentin and the North—The War in the East: The Holy Land—The End—The Peace Conference: The Treaty—Catholics in the War—The Eighteenth Amendment, ... 261

XLI. The Growth of Our Country, ... 276

XLII. The Growth of the Church, ... 281

The Declaration of Independence, ... 287

Table of States, ... 291

Table of Territories, ... 292

Presidents of the United States, ... 292

Part I.—Discoveries and Settlements.

CHAPTER I.

DISCOVERY OF AMERICA—THE VOYAGE OF COLUMBUS—THE NORTHMEN AND THE IRISH—THE INDIANS—CABOT'S EXPLORATIONS.

1. Columbus sails from Palos.—On Friday, the 3d of August, 1492, Christopher Columbus sailed from the port of Palos (*pah'lōs*), in Spain, on a voyage which resulted in the discovery of America, then an unknown land.

2. Christopher Columbus was born at Genoa (*jen'o-ah*), in Italy. The date of his birth is uncertain, but it was probably about the year 1435 or 1436. His father was a wool-weaver, but, instead of following that trade, Columbus at the age of fourteen went to sea. He made many voyages, in the course of which he sailed all over the known world and gained an excellent knowledge of navigation, and of geography as it was then known. This proved of value to him in more than one way, for, when other means failed, he supported himself by making maps and charts.

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

3. The western passage.—A large trade was carried on at that time between Europe and Asia. Most of the silks

1. Who discovered America? When did Columbus start on his voyage of discovery?—2. Where was Columbus born? What is known of his early life?

and jewels worn in Europe, as well as the spices and perfumes used there, came from India. That country was reached by way of the Mediterranean, the Red Sea, and thence overland by caravans, and a shorter and less expensive route had long been desired.

4. As the result of his voyages and studies, Columbus, in common with many learned men of his time, came to the conclusion that the earth is not flat, as was generally believed, but is round like a globe. He felt satisfied that by sailing westward from Europe he would find a passage by sea to eastern Asia, called India.

5. Columbus was a pious man, and the wish of his heart was to deliver the sepulchre of Our Lord at Jerusalem from the Mohammedans. To this purpose he intended to devote the riches which he hoped to gain by his voyage.

6. **Columbus seeks means for his voyage.**—Much money would be needed, however, for such a voyage as Columbus proposed; and he spent many years, unsuccessfully, in trying to persuade various governments of Europe to furnish him with the necessary money, men, and ships. Finally, in 1484, he set out for Spain.

7. **Columbus at the court of Spain.**—Queen Isabella of Spain received him kindly and looked with favor on his plan, but the learned men of her court opposed it. As she and her husband, Ferdinand, King of Arragon, were then engaged in a war with the Moors, they could not spare money for any uncertain undertakings, and Columbus was again disappointed.

8. **Father Juan Perez.** — For seven years Columbus pleaded his cause with these monarchs. At last, abandon-

5. How had India been reached from Europe before the time of Columbus? Why was a shorter route desired?—4. What was the result of the early voyages and discoveries of Columbus? In what direction did he propose to sail to reach India?—5. To what purpose did Columbus intend to devote the money gained by his voyages?—6. Where did he seek for means to pursue his discoveries? When did he set out for Spain?—7. Why could not Isabella furnish him with means for his voyage?

ing hope of their assistance, he was about to quit Spain when Father Juan Perez (*hwan pay'reth*), a learned Franciscan friar, came to his aid. Father Perez was a friend of Columbus, and a sincere believer in the success of the westward voyage. At one time the good friar was confessor to Queen Isabella, and she had great respect for his learning and piety. In his desire to help Columbus Father Perez not only wrote to the queen, but went to see her, and at last she promised to help his friend.

FATHER PEREZ.

9. Spain had not yet recovered from the expense of the war, and it was some time before Isabella decided to supply means for the voyage. Finally, the queen declared she would pledge her jewels, if necessary, to raise the required funds for Columbus. This she was not called upon to do, for the needed sum was obtained, and Columbus, with his men, having heard Mass and received Holy Communion, sailed on the voyage of discovery.

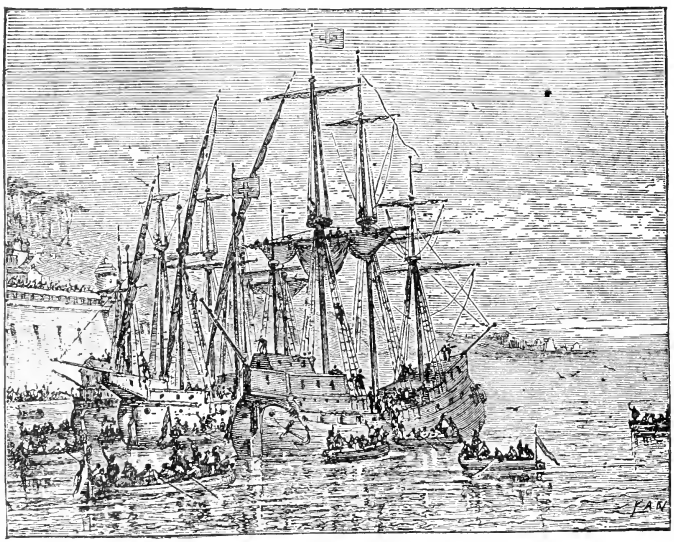
10. His fleet consisted of three small vessels. The largest of these, called the Santa Maria (*sahn'tah mah-ree'ah*), was chosen as the admiral's flag-ship and placed under the special protection of the blessed Mother of God. It bore a banner on which was a representation of Christ crucified. The other vessels were named the Pinta (*peen'tah*) and the Niña (*neen'yah*).

11. The voyage of discovery.—The expedition first touched at the Canary Islands, and, after making some repairs, resumed the voyage. Day after day the three vessels sailed without seeing any land, until the sailors became alarmed,

8. Who came to the help of Columbus? Who was Father Perez?—9. What was the result of the influence of Father Perez?

and were more than once on the point of a mutiny. Columbus quieted them, however, by coaxing, by promises, and by threats. But, finally, they broke into open rebellion, and threatened to throw the admiral overboard if he did not turn his bows toward Europe. This he sternly and positively refused to do, and continued on his voyage.

12. Land.—A day or two later green rushes, weeds, a branch of thorn with fresh berries on it, and other signs of



COLUMBUS LEAVING PALOS.

land were seen, and on the night of October 11th Columbus himself, standing on the bow of his vessel, saw a light moving in the darkness. Every eye was strained, and at two o'clock on the morning of Friday, October 12th, 1492, a sailor on the Pinta sighted land, and a cannon was fired to announce the joyful tidings.

13. San Salvador.—The morning light showed an island

11. How did Columbus's crew act?—12. When was land seen? How many years ago is that?

covered with luxuriant vegetation. Columbus made haste to land, and no sooner had he touched the ground than, falling on his knees, he kissed it three times, and returned thanks to Almighty God for the favor granted to him. He called the island San Salvador, which means *Holy Saviour*,

THE LANDING OF COLUMBUS.

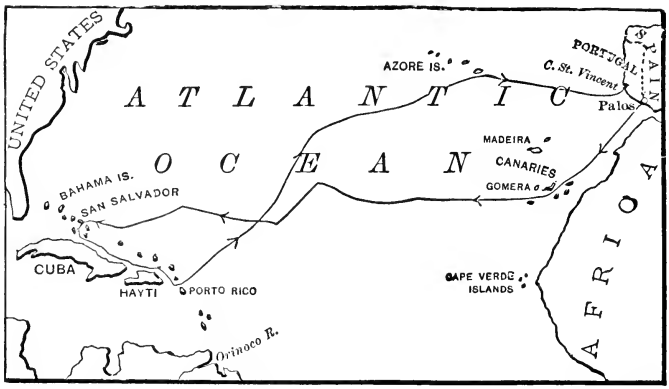
and, planting a cross, took possession in the name of Queen Isabella. The place thus discovered was one of the Bahama (*ba-hā'mah*) Islands, called Guanahani (*gwah-nah-hah'nee*) by the native inhabitants.

14. The Northmen and the Irish.—Columbus was not the first white man to discover this country. Centuries before his coming Northmen from Iceland had visited the New World, and even before their time Irish priests had come here to preach the Gospel. These expeditions, however, were entirely forgotten in Europe, and the history of this country, as far as we are concerned, begins with its discovery by Columbus in 1492.

15. Cuba and Hayti.—From San Salvador Columbus visited the neighboring islands, and discovered Cuba and Hayti.

16. The Indians.—The natives of all these islands re-

13. What did Columbus do on landing?—14. Was Columbus the first white man to discover America? Who had visited this continent before his time?—15. What other islands did Columbus discover?



THE ROUTE OF COLUMBUS.

sembled one another; they were tall and well formed, of a copper color, with high cheek-bones, straight, glossy, black hair, but without beards; they lived by hunting and fishing, and were simple in their habits and customs. As Columbus believed he was on the coast of eastern India, he called the natives *Indians*, and by that name all the inhabitants of the lands discovered by him became known.

17. Columbus returns to Spain.—At the beginning of the year 1493 Columbus sailed for Spain, taking with him some Indians, gold, fruit, birds, and arms of the New World. He was received with great honor by Ferdinand and Isabella, and the story of his voyage and the strange lands he had discovered was listened to with wonder. Queen Isabella consecrated to God the first gold from America; she ordered it to be made into a monstrance, which is still preserved in the Cathedral of Seville.

18. Spain takes possession.—Spain lost no time in sending out a second expedition under the command of Columbus. This sailed in the latter part of November, 1493. Accompanying it were Father Bernard Boil, a Benedictine

16. What is said about the natives of these islands? Why are they called Indians?—17. When did Columbus return to Spain? How was he received by Ferdinand and Isabella?

monk, who was appointed by the Pope Vicar-Apostolic for the Indies, and twelve other religious of different Orders, to help in the work of converting the natives. It was on this expedition that Columbus founded the city of Isabella in the island of Hayti or Saint Domingo.

19. The third voyage of Columbus.—Columbus made a third voyage in 1498, and discovered the coast of South America near the mouth of the River Orinoco.

20. Columbus is sent back to Spain in chains.—Dissatisfaction arose, however, and men greedy for wealth and

RECEPTION OF COLUMBUS BY FERDINAND AND ISABELLA.

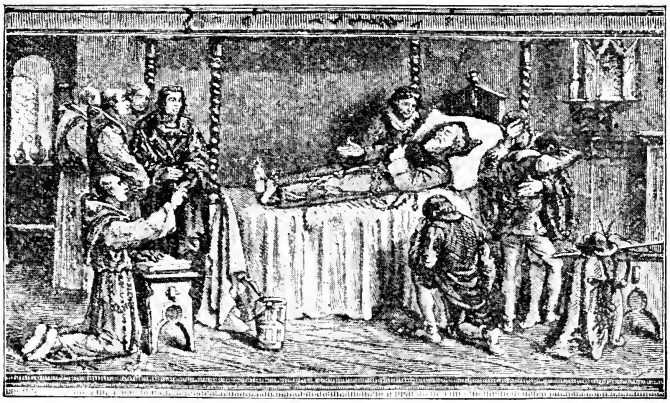
power made false charges against Columbus. An officer was sent from Spain to look into the case. This man believed the stories against the admiral, put him in chains, and sent him back to Spain. Queen Isabella, indignant at this ill treatment of one who had brought such great honor on her country, ordered his release, and showed him every mark of her favor.

21. The last voyage of Columbus was made in 1502. Continuing his discoveries, he reached Panama; then turning

18. Give an account of the second voyage of Columbus.—19. What did Columbus discover on his third voyage?—20. How was he sent back to Spain?

north, he sailed as far as Honduras. The expedition proved disastrous, and he returned to Spain to find that his patron, Queen Isabella, was dead. Forsaken by his former friends, neglected, and in poverty, Columbus died at Valladolid, in Spain, in 1506.

22. How the continent came to be called America.—The countries discovered by Columbus were called the Indies;



THE DEATH OF COLUMBUS.

but Americus Vesputius (*ah-mer'ee-kus ves-pu'shee-us*), a native of Florence, in Italy, also made some voyages, of which he wrote an interesting account. A German professor of geography, who read this account, was greatly pleased with it, and, knowing nothing of Columbus, named the country *America*, in honor of the man whom he supposed to be the discoverer.

23. The discovery of the North American continent.—The discoveries of Columbus led to expeditions on the part of others who were seeking fame and fortune. In 1496 John Cabot (*kab'bot*), a Venetian residing in Bristol, suggested an expedition from England, and Henry VII., King of

21. What was the result of the last voyage of Columbus? When and where did he die?—22. How did the continent come to be called America?

England, desiring to profit by any discoveries, authorized Cabot to explore and occupy new lands.

24. Cabot and his son Sebastian sailed the following year, and the result of their voyage was the discovery of Newfoundland, June 24, 1497. Thus the coast of North America was discovered nearly fourteen months before Columbus on his third voyage came in sight of the mainland of South America.

25. Sebastian Cabot made a second voyage, in which he reached Labrador; then turning, he coasted along the continent to the neighborhood of Albemarle Sound.

26. Thus we learn that the New World was discovered in 1492 by Christopher Columbus, to whom all the honor and glory of the discovery rightly belong, and that the country was misnamed through a mistake. We further learn that the continent of North America was discovered, five years later, by John Cabot.

NOTE.—The age in which Columbus lived was truly one of discovery. In 1498 Vasco da Gama (vas'ko dah gah'mah), a Portuguese, reached India by sailing round the Cape of Good Hope. In 1513 Vasco Nuñez de Balboa (vas'ko noon-yeth deh balbo'ah), a Spaniard, while on an exploring expedition to the Isthmus of Panama, discovered the Pacific Ocean, and six years later, in 1519, Magellan (*ma-jel' an*), another Portuguese, left Seville, Spain, with five vessels, and sailed round South America into what was then known as the "South Sea." This he called the "Pacific Ocean," because it was so calm. During a voyage of three years one of Magellan's vessels sailed entirely round the globe, ending by returning to Spain. This was *the first circumnavigation of the globe*, and proved that America was an independent continent, and not part of the old World, as many believed. Although interesting, these facts do not strictly belong to the history of the *United States*.

Topics for Review.—The conclusions Columbus reached from his voyages and studies—Where he sought for means for his voyage—Who furnished the means—The result of his voyage—The nations that had visited America before the coming of Columbus—How Columbus was treated, and how he died—How the New World received its name—The voyages of the Cabots.

24. Who discovered the North American continent?—25. What was the result of Cabot's second voyage?

CHAPTER II.

PONCE DE LEON—DISCOVERY OF FLORIDA—GARAY DISCOVERS THE MISSISSIPPI—AYLLON, GOMEZ, NARVAEZ, DE SOTO, CORONADO—THE FRENCH AND THE SPANIARDS IN FLORIDA.

27. After the discoveries of Columbus, Spain, led by a desire to spread Christianity and to secure the treasures of the country, explored the New World still further. She established colonies in the principal islands of the West Indies, and from these sent expeditions to the mainland.

28. Ponce de Leon discovers Florida.—In 1512 John Ponce de Leon (*pone'thay day lay-ohn'*), who had been a fellow-voyager of Columbus in his second expedition, hearing of a beautiful island called Bimini (*bee'mee-nee*), obtained permission from the King of Spain to search for and settle it.

29. This island was said to contain a fountain which would give perpetual youth to those who should drink of its waters. De Leon believed the tale; he sailed from Porto Rico (*por'to ree'ko*), and on Easter Sunday, March 27, 1513, discovered Florida. He gave it that name in honor of the festival of Easter, called by the Spaniards Pascua Florida (*pahs-koo'ah flor'e-dah*). De Leon sailed down the coast, around the cape, and continued for some distance along the shore of the Gulf of Mexico.

30. Ponce de Leon mortally wounded.—As his reward Ponce de Leon on his return to Porto Rico obtained from the King of Spain the government of Florida on condition that he should colonize the country. For this pur-

27. What led Spain to explore the New World still further? Where did she establish colonies?—28. What is said of Ponce de Leon? What island did he obtain permission to settle?—29. From what port did Ponce de Leon sail? When did he discover Florida? Why was it so called?

pose he again set out with vessels and people from Porto Rico in 1521.

31. As soon as the Spaniards landed, and began to cut down trees with which to build houses, they were attacked by the Indians. The governor was a brave and experienced soldier, but many of his men were killed, and the others were forced to flee to their ships. Ponce de Leon himself was mortally wounded, and losing all hope of making a settlement, sailed away for Cuba, where he died.

32. Garay discovers the Mississippi.— An event which does not strictly belong to the history of the United States was the conquest of the rich kingdom of Mexico by Hernando Cortes (*kor-tez'*) in 1519.

33. This led to other expeditions by the Spaniards. In the same year (1519) Francisco Garay (*gah-rye'*), governor of Jamaica, fitted out an expedition to explore the coast between Mexico and Florida. In 1520 Camargo, an officer sent out by Garay, discovered the Mississippi River, which he named Espiritu Santo (*ess-pee'ree-too san'to*), and explored the country from Pensacola Bay to Tampico (*tam-peek'o*). This country was named Amichel (*ah-mee-chel'*).

34. Ayllon's discoveries and settlements.—In 1520 a vessel was sent out by Lucas Vasquez de Ayllon (*loo'kas vass'keth day ile-yone'*) in search of laborers for the plantations and mines of Hayti. It reached the mouth of the Pedee River. The Spaniards gained the confidence of the natives by presents and other means, and then invited a number of them to visit the ship. When they came they were at once seized, and the vessel sailed for Saint Domingo.

35. Ayllon obtained from the king the right, called **a**

30. What reward did Ponce de Leon receive for his discovery?—31. What happened to Ponce de Leon on his second expedition to Florida? Where did he die?—32. When and by whom was Mexico conquered?—33. What is said of Francisco Garay? What river did Camargo discover? In what year?—34. What is said of Ayllon? How did the Spaniards treat the natives?

patent, to settle the country he had thus robbed, and in 1525 he sailed with a number of colonists. Not finding a good harbor, he kept along the coast until he reached Chesapeake Bay, and entering it he ascended a river to a place called by the Indians Guandape (*gwan-dah-pay'*), where he began the settlement of St. Michael's. This was on the James River, where Jamestown was afterward begun. Houses were put up and the ground cleared, and this was the first actual settlement made by Europeans in this country. A number of the settlers, however, were taken sick and died, and Ayllon himself was carried off by disease. Then the settlement was abandoned and the colonists returned to the West Indies. Two Dominican Fathers who accompanied the colonists were the first ministers of religion to offer divine worship in what is now the United States.

36. Voyage of Stephen Gomez.—It began to be generally believed that the newly-discovered country was not part of the Indies, and in 1525 the Spanish government sent Stephen Gomez (*go-meth'*), an experienced naval officer, to find a passage to Asia. He explored the coast from Chesapeake Bay to Cape Breton, and on old Spanish maps the country around New York harbor is called the "Land of Gomez." Thus by 1525 the Spaniards completed the exploration of our whole coast from Texas to Maine.

37. Narvaez.—In 1527 Pamphilo de Narvaez (*pam'-feel-o day nar-vah'eth*), a Spanish adventurer, sailed from Cuba with over three hundred men to conquer Florida. But owing to the hostility of the natives, famine, disease, and shipwreck, the expedition proved disastrous. Narvaez

35. What is a *patent* for a country? What bay and river did Ayllon reach? What can you say about the settlement of St. Michael's? Who were the first ministers of religion to offer divine worship in what is now the United States?—36. Why was Stephen Gomez sent out with an exploring expedition? What was the country around New York harbor called? How much of our coast had the Spaniards explored by 1525?

and his companions perished, only three surviving to reach a Spanish settlement on the western coast of Mexico.

38. De Soto's expeditions.—These men reported that there were rich kingdoms in the interior, and two great expeditions were formed to conquer the country. One under Ferdinand De Soto sailed from Spain with a large force.

39. De Soto landed at Tampa Bay, Florida, in May, 1539, and marched up to the Savannah River, in search of gold mines. Thence he moved down to Mavilla (*mah-veel'yah*), an Indian town on the Alabama River. There, in October, 1540, he had a terrible battle with the Indians, in which he lost 200 men and nearly all his horses, baggage, and ammunition.

40. Death of De Soto.—Too proud to give up his expedition, De Soto went northward, crossed the Mississippi, continued his march until he almost reached the Missouri River, and then turned south, fighting the Indians nearly all the way. He died on the Mississippi, near the mouth of the Red River, in May, 1542. His body, wrapped in his cloak, was sunk at midnight in the great river.

41. Coronado's expedition.—The other great Spanish expedition set out in 1540 from Sinaloa on the Gulf of California, which had been reached by Cortes, under the direction of Francis Coronado (*ko-ro-nah'do*). Reaching the River Gila (*hee'lah*), it kept on until the Indian town of Zuñi (*zoon'ye*) was reached. This consisted of houses several stories high, all built together in a square. There were no doors or entrances on the lower part; the people went up by ladders from story to story until they reached the roof, where the entrance was.

37. With what object did Narvaez sail in 1527? What was the result of his expedition?—38. What reports were made by the survivors of Narvaez's expedition? Who raised an expedition to conquer the rich kingdoms?—39. What do you know of De Soto? In what direction did he move? What was the result of his battle with the Indians?—40. What rivers did De Soto reach and cross? When and where did he die? Where was he buried?—41. What other Spanish expedition set out in search of riches? What Indian town did it reach? How are the Zuñi houses built?

42. The Indians attacked Coronado, but he defeated them. He continued his march till he reached the Rio Grande (*ree'o grän'day*) and discovered many other towns built like Zuñi of stone or of brick baked in the sun. The people were industrious, had large fields of corn and pumpkins, and knew how to spin, and to weave cloth; but they had no gold or other great wealth such as the Spaniards expected to find.

43. Quivira and missionaries.—Hearing of a rich country called Quivira (*kee-vee'rah*), Coronado marched from New Mexico over the great prairies where the Indians lived by hunting the bison (commonly called the *buffalo*), to find that Quivira was only a village of Indian huts, near the Mississippi and Missouri rivers. Here Coronado with his well-clothed troops and plentiful supplies was so near De Soto's starving men that an Indian woman from his camp reached the camp of De Soto.

44. Coronado returned to Mexico, but Father John de Padilla (*day pah-deel'yah*), a Franciscan missionary, remained with a companion in Quivira. They tried to teach the Indians the truths of the Gospel, but were soon put to death.

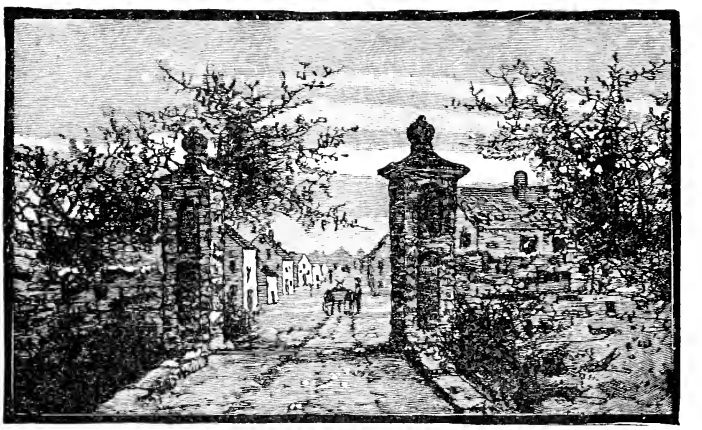
45. Attempts to settle Florida.— Philip II., King of Spain, made several attempts to settle Florida. A pious missionary, Father Luis Cancer, a Dominican, undertook the peaceful conversion of the Indians, but the natives feared the priests were enemies, and Father Luis and two others were put to death. Then the king sent Tristan de Luna (*trees'tan day loon'ah*) to make a settlement on Pensacola Bay and one at Port Royal, but the colony did not succeed.

46. Menendez founds St. Augustine.—In July 1565,

42. What river did Coronado reach? Describe the condition of the natives of that section of the country.—43. What further explorations did Coronado make? Describe Quivira.—44. What did Father John de Padilla do, and what was his fate?—45. Who attempted to settle Florida? What was the fate of Father Luis Cancer and his companions? What was the result of Tristan de Luna's expedition?

Peter Menendez (*may-nen'deth*) was sent by Philip II. to exterminate the French who had settled in Florida, and to occupy the country. Menendez reached the coast of Florida in the latter part of August, and on September 5, 1565, founded St. Augustine, the oldest city in the United States.

47. The French commander endeavored to attack the Spaniards, but his vessels were wrecked. Menendez then led



OLD GATE AT ST. AUGUSTINE.

his forces through lake, marsh, and forests, and, under cover of a heavy fog, surprised the French at Fort Caroline, and put them to the sword.

48. Spanish fort at Port Royal and on the St. John's.—Menendez established a fort on the St. John's River and another at Port Royal. He sent missionaries as far north as the shores of Chesapeake Bay, where several Jesuit Fathers were killed by the natives. The services of the Catholic Church begun at St. Augustine in 1565 by Rev.

46. When and why was Menendez sent to Florida? What city was founded by him, and when? How many years ago is it?—47. What do you know of the French at Fort Caroline?—48. What forts did Menendez establish? Where was the permanent worship of God in this country first begun?

Martin de Mendoza were the first permanent worship of God in this country.

49. Looking back, we find as a result of the Spanish expeditions that Florida and the Mississippi River were discovered; that St. Augustine, the oldest city in the United States, was founded; that two Dominicans were the first ministers of religion to offer divine worship in this country, and that by the year 1525 the Spaniards had completed the exploration of our whole coast from Texas to Maine.

Topics for Review.—Among the various expeditions sent out to America were those under 1. Ponce de Leon—2. Ayllon—3. De Soto—4. Menendez. Tell what you can of them.

CHAPTER III.

FRENCH EXPLORERS — DENYS, VERRAZZANO, CARTIER — RELIGIOUS CHANGES IN EUROPE — A FRENCH PROTESTANT SETTLEMENT — CHAMPLAIN—FRENCH MISSIONARIES AND MARTYRS.

50. French industry.—While the Spaniards were wasting their lives, their energies, and their money in pursuit of gold, the more practical French applied themselves to industries that were sure to bring a reward. Soon after Cabot discovered North America hardy fishermen from the coast of France sailed over, and on the banks of Newfoundland began to catch and dry codfish and take them to France.

51. Denys and Verrazzano.—As early as 1510 John Denys (*den-ee'*), a French captain, visited the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and in 1524 Verrazzano (*ver-rat-tzah'no*), an Italian, under a commission from the King of France, explored the Atlantic coast from Carolina to Newfoundland. Soon after

50. Who came over from France soon after Cabot discovered North America?

a trading-post was established at Brest, on the northern shore of the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

52. Cartier's voyages.—From 1534 to 1541 James Cartier (*kar tee-a'*) made several voyages to the New World in the interest of France. In the course of these he gave the name of St. Lawrence to the beautiful gulf and river which he first saw on the feast of that saint. He entered the St. Lawrence River and sailed up to what is now Quebec; then he explored in small boats to the rapids above an island which he named Mont Royal, since changed to Montreal (*mun'tree-all*). He anchored his ships for safety on the little River St. Charles, below the heights of Quebec. Then he built a small fort and wintered there, but many of his men were taken sick and died. He afterward returned to France.

53. Some years after, Roberval (*ro-bare-val'*), a French nobleman, tried to establish a settlement on the St. Lawrence, but without any permanent result.

54. Religious changes in Europe.—When Columbus discovered America in 1492 all Western Europe was Catholic; but early in the next century Martin Luther, an Augustinian friar, began to deny many of the doctrines of the Catholic Church, as well as the authority of the Pope and Bishops. He was condemned (that is, declared to be in the wrong) in 1520 by Pope Leo X.

55. Others preached similar doctrines to Luther's, and what is called the Protestant Reformation spread to many countries. In England a State Church, called the Church of England, was established; Scotland and Holland became Calvinist; Denmark, Sweden, Norway, and Northern Germany became Lutheran. In these countries the Catho-

51. What French captain visited the Gulf of St. Lawrence in 1510? What did Verrazzano explore? What trading-post did the French establish?—52. What gulf and river did Cartier explore? How far did he ascend the river? Where did he winter?—53. Where did Roberval try to establish a settlement?—54. What was the religion of Western Europe when Columbus discovered America? Who caused a great change?

lic religion was prohibited, and those who professed it were persecuted.

56. Religion in France.—In France many adopted the doctrines of Calvin, but the king remained Catholic, and from this difference civil wars resulted, which brought great misery on the kingdom.

57. French Protestant settlement.—In 1562 Admiral Coligny (*ko-leen-yee'*), the leader of the Huguenots (*hu'ge-nots*), or French Protestants, resolved to establish a colony in America, as a refuge. He sent out an expedition under the command of John Ribault (*ree-bo'*), who erected Fort Charles in Port Royal Sound, in what we now call South Carolina. But the settlers were lazy and unwilling to work. Finally they killed the commanding officer, and made a rude vessel on which they started back to Europe. Had they not been picked up by a passing ship they would probably have been lost. Coligny sent out another expedition in 1564, which built Fort Caroline on the St. John's River in Florida.

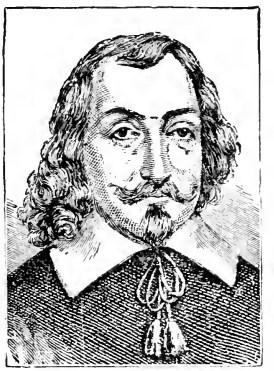
58. Philip II., King of Spain, sends Melendez to exterminate the French.—When the King of Spain learned that French Protestants had actually settled in Florida, he sent out a fleet under Melendez (see ¶46) to occupy the country and exterminate the French, both of which ends Melendez accomplished.

59. Massacre of the Spanish settlers.—In 1568 Dominic de Gourges (*deh goorg*), a French adventurer, fitted out an expedition, partly at his own expense and partly by the help of his friends, and sailed for Florida to avenge the slaughter of his countrymen. He surprised the Spaniards,

55. What religion was established in England? What countries became Calvinist? What countries became Lutheran?—56. What was the result of religious differences in France?—57. Who resolved to establish a French Protestant colony in America? Whom did he send? What settlement did Ribault found? What became of it? What fort was built by Coligny's second expedition?—58. Whom did Philip II. send to exterminate the French?

slew four or five hundred of them, and then returned to France.

60. Expeditions to Canada.—In 1604 De Monts (*deh mong*), a Protestant nobleman, founded Port Royal, afterward called Annapolis, in Acadia (now known as Nova Scotia). The French government, however, wanted him to begin a new settlement on the St. Lawrence, and for this purpose, in 1608, he sent out Samuel de Champlain (*deh shĕm-plain'*), an experienced navigator, with an expedition.



SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN.

61. Extension of power in Canada.—Champlain landed in July, 1608, and, putting up some sheds, laid the foundation of Quebec, and that place became the capital of French power in America. Trading-posts were established at Tadoussac near the mouth of the Saguenay (*săg'e-nā'*) River, at Three Rivers, and at Montreal.

62. Canada was in the hands of a trading company. The three great Indian tribes of Canada were the Montagnais (*mŏn-tahn'yays*), the Algonquins (*al-gon'kwĭns*), and the Hurons. The French persuaded these tribes to come down every year in their bark canoes, by way of the Ottawa River, and exchange their furs for goods brought out from Europe.

63. Champlain takes sides with the Canadian Indians in their wars against the Five Nations.—Champlain gained the friendship of the Canadian tribes, and took sides with them in their wars against their enemies the Iroquois (*ee-rō-kwah'*),

59. How was the slaughter of the French in Florida avenged?—60. Who founded Port Royal in Acadia? Who was sent out to begin a new settlement on the St. Lawrence?—61. Who founded Quebec? Where were trading-posts established?—62. Who controlled Canada? How were the furs brought down?

or Five Nations. **He defeated the Mohawks, who belonged** to the Five Nations, near Lake Champlain, which body of water he discovered. At another time he accompanied the Hurons in an attack on a fort near Lake Oneida (*o-nī'dah*). In consequence of this, when the Five Nations obtained fire-arms from the Dutch in New York, they sought to be revenged, and caused much trouble to the French and their Indian allies.

64. Missions among the Indians.—In the interests of Canada Champlain made many visits to France, and persuaded nobles and merchants to aid the colony. He also, in 1615, brought over some Recollect or Franciscan Fathers. They established a chapel at Quebec, and began missions to convert the Indians from the St. Lawrence to Lake Huron.

65. Ten years later some Jesuit Fathers came over, at the invitation of the Recollect Fathers of Paris, to aid in the good work. Among these devoted priests were Fathers Masse, Lalemant (*lăl'mŏn*), and Brebeuf (*brā-bŭf'*). The two latter were afterward cruelly tortured and then killed by the Iroquois in 1649

66. Canada captured and restored.—In spite of the efforts of Champlain and others, the colony made but little progress, and in 1628 a company with a large capital was formed in France to aid the settlement. Four armed vessels and a fleet of eighteen transports, with emigrants and stores, were sent out, but they were captured by some English cruisers—France and England being at war at that time.

67. The supplies for the settlement being thus cut off, the people of the colony were on the point of starvation. While in this condition, with only a few famished men and without means of defence, three English vessels appeared

63. What tribes did Champlain aid? What lake did he discover? What was the result of Champlain's helping the Hurons?—64. What priests did he bring over to Canada? Where did they establish a chapel? Where did they begin missions?—65. What priests came to aid the Franciscans?—66. What happened in 1628.

before Quebec and demanded its surrender. Resistance being useless, Champlain delivered up the port. It was subsequently found, however, that peace had been declared before the capture of the city, and Quebec, with all the property seized, was restored to France.

68. The College of Quebec.—After this the French showed more activity. A fort and settlement were begun at Three Rivers, and in the year 1635 the Jesuits, aided by the Marquis de Gamache (*mar-kee deh gä-mäsh'*), founded the College of Quebec, the oldest university north of Mexico, of which Laval University may be considered the continuation. In July, 1639, Ursuline nuns came out to teach the children, and other nuns established a hospital.

69. Death of Champlain.—Thus the first permanent French settlement in the New World was effected by Champlain; he had the happiness of seeing two French posts established, the natives cared for by devoted missionaries, and the colonists well provided for. He died on Christmas day, 1635, leaving behind him an honorable name as a commander, an executive officer, and a Christian gentleman.

70. Montreal founded.—In 1642 a pious association in France founded the city of Montreal. The Jesuits now began work in earnest, and for many years had charge of all the churches in the settlement and looked after the natives. Flourishing missions were established among the Hurons and all the tribes along the St. Lawrence. Many of the missionaries, however, were put to death during the long Indian wars then raging. In the course of these wars the Hurons were nearly blotted out by the Five Nations, and the French also suffered from the attacks of the savages.

67. By whom was Quebec taken? Why was it restored?—68. What progress was made after Canada was restored to the French? Who founded the College of Quebec? What was done by the nuns?—69. Who effected the first permanent French settlement in the New World? When did Champlain die?—70. When was Montreal founded? What progress did the Catholic missions make? Who destroyed the Hurons?

71. Martyrdom of Father Jogues.—In 1643 Father Isaac Jogues (*Zhōg*), who had been captured and terribly tortured by the Mohawks, returned to France. He spent only a few months there, and in the spring of 1644 started again for his mission.

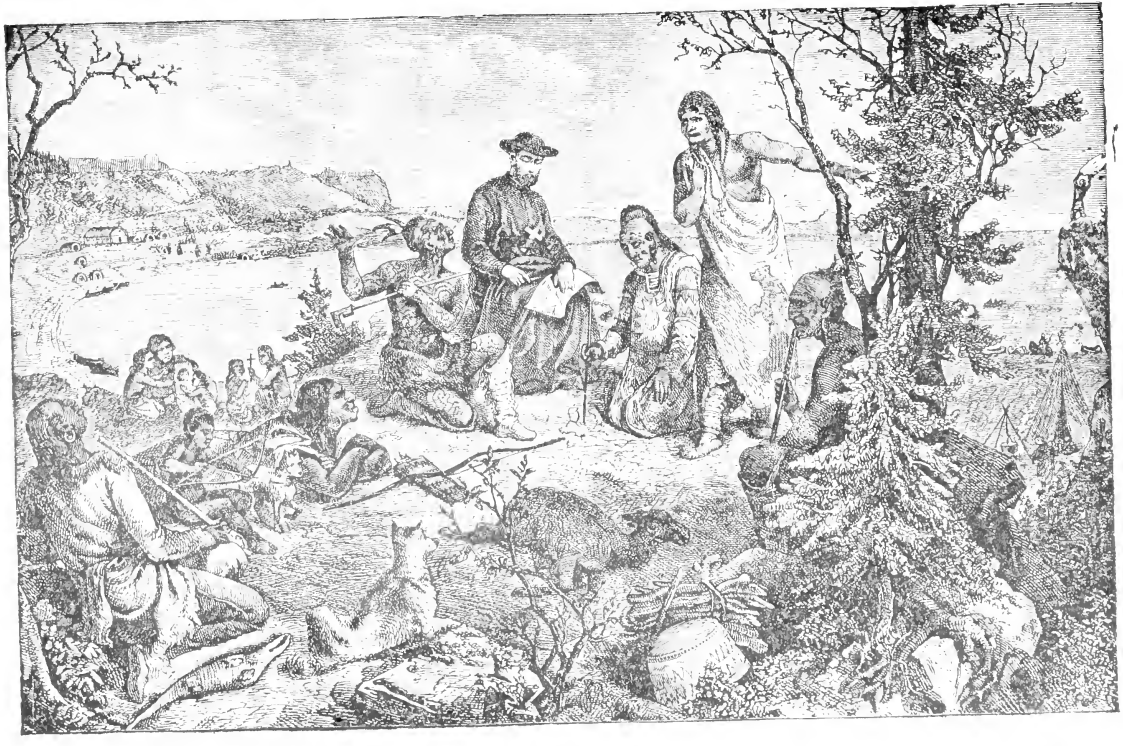
72. When he reached Montreal he accompanied an embassy that was leaving for the purpose of making peace with the Iroquois. The expedition was successful and was

TORTURE OF FATHER JOGUES AND ONE OF HIS COMPANIONS.

followed by a second and a third. Father Jogues foresaw danger on the third expedition, but that did not keep him from going. On his way he was seized by a war-party of the Iroquois, subjected to most cruel treatment, and finally tomahawked, October 18, 1646, near what is now Auriesville, New York. A memorial chapel has since been erected on the spot.

73. The Iroquois War.—This war nearly ruined Canada,

72. What missionary was put to death by the Mohawks?



FATHER MARQUETTE ON THE MISSISSIPPI

and at last France sent over regular troops, and ravaged the country of the Five Nations until peace was made.

74. Missionaries then appeared in the towns of the Five Nations and among all the Western tribes. There were mission stations from the Mohawk to the Seneca country, at Michilimakinac (*mish-il-ee-mak'ee-naw*), Green Bay, and on Lake Superior. These missions were repeatedly interrupted by wars, but were never abandoned.

75. The exploration of the Mississippi.—The missionaries in the West were anxious to reach the Mississippi, of which they often heard, and in 1673 Louis Joliet (*jole'yay*) was sent to explore it. With the Jesuit Father Marquette (*mar-ket'*) he made his way in a bark canoe from Green Bay to the Wisconsin River, and followed it to its mouth. Then they descended the Mississippi as far as the Arkansas River, and returned to report that the great river really existed and ran south to the Gulf of Mexico. Soon after Father Marquette died, having in his last days, while sinking with consumption, founded a mission among the Illinois Indians.

76. La Salle's projects.—At the time of Marquette's death there dwelt at the outlet of Lake Ontario Robert Cavelier de la Salle (*ro'bare cav-al'yā deh lah sal*), a bold, adventurous man, of great force of character. He obtained a grant for the trade of the Mississippi, established a trading-house at Niagara, built a little fort in Illinois, and descended the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico.

77. In 1683 he returned to France, where he obtained men and stores, and then sailed for Texas, bent on attacking the rich mines of Mexico. When he reached the

73. What did the attacks of the Iroquois compel the French to do?—74. Where were missions established after peace was made?—75. Who was sent with Father Marquette to explore the Mississippi River in 1673? Describe the route taken. What became of Father Marquette?—76. What do you know of La Salle? How far did he go on the Mississippi? What name had early Spanish explorers given the Mississippi? (*Ans.* The Spaniards called it the Espiritu Santo, or River of the Holy Ghost. See ¶ 33.)

coast of Texas he disembarked, and there, owing to trouble with his naval commander, he was abandoned and left with only a small force. With the energy that marked his character, La Salle set out by land to find the Mississippi, but on the way was murdered by one of his own men.

78. The claims of France.—By reason of these discoveries France claimed all the country west of the Alleghany Mountains, and had posts at Niagara, Mackinaw, and Green Bay, and on the Illinois and Arkansas rivers.

79. James II., who was then King of England, saw how dangerous the French power might become to the English colonies, and persuaded the Five Nations to send away the French Jesuits, and promised them English priests. He claimed the great lakes as the boundary between the English and the French. The fall of King James, which occurred in 1688, led to a war between England and France, in which the colonies were involved, and was the cause of great misery for many years.

80. In the preceding pages we have learned of the religious change that took place in Europe at the beginning of the sixteenth century, a change that from time to time was to cause great suffering even in the New World. We have also learned of the colonization of Port Royal, on the western coast of what is now Nova Scotia, the first *permanent* French colony in America, and of the settlement of Canada under the leadership of the great Champlain.

Topics for Review.—Tell what you can about

1. French explorers: Denys and Verrazzano—Cartier—2. Religious changes—3. Canada—4. Champlain—5. Father Jogues—6. Iroquois war—7. Father Marquette—8. La Salle.

77. Why did La Salle sail to Texas? What was the result of his voyage?—78. What claim did France make in consequence of these discoveries?—79. What did James II. see, and how did he act? What was the result of his fall?

CHAPTER IV.

ATTEMPTS TO SETTLE VIRGINIA—THE LONDON AND THE PLYMOUTH COMPANY—HENRY HUDSON.

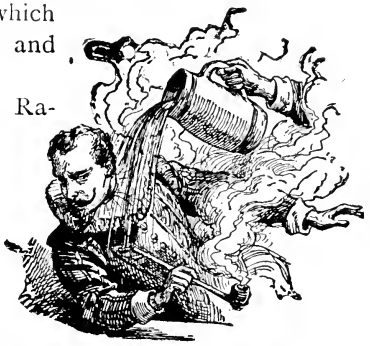
81. An English Catholic settlement attempted.—Toward the close of the sixteenth century the Catholics in England suffered great persecution, many being put to death or imprisoned. To escape this, Sir George Peckham, a Catholic, proposed to Sir Humphrey Gilbert to establish a colony for Catholics in Norumbega (*No-rum-be'ga*), now Maine. Gilbert in 1583 obtained from Elizabeth, Queen of England, a patent to a large territory in America, and securing the further necessary permission, set sail. Gilbert reached Newfoundland, but the undertaking proved a failure. The brave leader started to return to England, but his vessels were scattered in a storm, and Gilbert went down in the little bark in which he sailed. The survivors of the expedition succeeded in reaching England.

82. Sir Walter Raleigh's attempt to settle Virginia.—Walter Raleigh (*raw'lee*), a step-brother of Gilbert's, nothing daunted by his fate, obtained a patent from the queen, and in 1584 sent out two vessels to America. These ships explored Pamlico and Albemarle Sounds, and carried to England such a favorable report of the country that Elizabeth, who was proud of her title of "Virgin Queen," named it Virginia and knighted Raleigh as a reward for his enterprise.

83. In 1585 Raleigh sent out Ralph Lane, who began a

81. What was the condition of Catholics at that time in England? Who proposed to form a Catholic settlement? What became of the expedition? Who obtained a patent in 1583 and from whom?—82. Who next attempted to form a settlement? What did Raleigh's ships explore? What name did Queen Elizabeth give the country?

settlement on Roanoke Island; but after struggling with hardships for a year the colonists took passage on a ship of Sir Francis Drake's which happened to touch there, and returned to England.



84. The only result of Raleigh's attempt was the introduction of tobacco into England, the colonists having learned its use from the Indians. It is related that a servant of Raleigh's who saw him smoking thought him to be on fire, and poured a pitcher of ale over him.

85. Another attempt to colonize was made in 1587 by John White, but the fate of the people he left there was never known.

86. Voyages of Gosnold and Pring.—In 1602 and 1603 two English captains, Bartholomew Gosnold and Martin Pring, explored all the New England coast. No permanent settlement was made by either, and though their expeditions bore little fruit, it was by just such voyages that English sea-captains became familiar with the entire coast-line from Maine to Florida.

87. The London and the Plymouth Company.—In 1603 two companies were formed in England by persons who wished to settle and trade in America. To one of these, called the London Company, King James I. granted the right to South Virginia, the country between Cape Fear and the Potomac; and to the other, the Plymouth Company, he gave North Virginia, between the eastern end of

83. When did Raleigh send out settlers? What was the result?—84. Tell what you know about the introduction of tobacco into England.—85. What was the result of John White's attempt at colonization?—86. Who explored the New England coast in 1602–3? What part of our coast was by this time familiar to English sea-captains.

Long Island, and the northern limit of the mainland of Nova Scotia. Each colony was to be governed by a resident council of thirteen appointed by the king, with power to choose its own president. This council, in turn, was to be governed by a general council in London, and both councils were subject to the king's will.

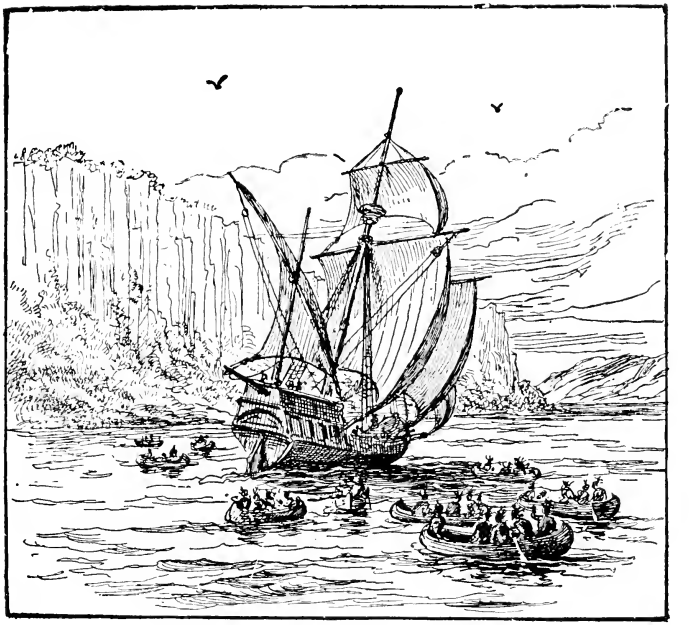
88. The Plymouth Company attempts to settle on the Kennebec.—The Plymouth Company sent out an expedition under command of George Popham, which settled on the Kennebec River, but the commander died, and his people abandoned the country.

89. The London Company settles Virginia.—In December, 1606, the London Company despatched three vessels, the "Susan Constant," the "God-Speed," and the "Discovery," with 105 emigrants, all males, under Captain Christopher Newport, an experienced seaman, to make a settlement on Chesapeake Bay. Newport sailed up a river which he called the James, and finding a suitable site, on May 13, 1607, founded Jamestown, named, like the river, in honor of the English monarch.

90. Henry Hudson's voyage.—In 1609 Henry Hudson, an Englishman in the service of the Dutch government, sailed from Amsterdam in search of a passage round the northern extremity of the American continent to India. Finding his way barred by the ice, he turned and explored part of the east coast of America. On September 3d he entered a fine harbor, and in his ship, the "Half Moon," ascended the river which has since been known by his name—the Hudson. He opened trade with the natives, and took back to Holland a favorable report of the country.

91. The Dutch erect a fort.—Dutch trading vessels began

87. What two companies were formed in England? What two grants did James I. make to them? How were the colonies to be governed? —88. Where did the Plymouth Company attempt to settle? What became of the colony?—89. What did the London Company do? What did Newport do?—90. With what object did Henry Hudson sail? Why did he abandon his proposed trip? What river did he enter?



THE "HALF MOON" ASCENDING THE HUDSON.

to visit the region which the government in Holland named New Netherlands, and a fort, called Nassau, was erected on Castle Island on the Hudson, south of the present city of Albany.

92. Thus we find at the beginning of the seventeenth century that four different, and rival, European nations laid claim, by right of discovery, to territory in the New World. Under the names of *Florida* and *New Spain* the Spaniards claimed the whole of what is now known as the United States, and the remainder of the Pacific coast. The French claimed Acadia (Nova Scotia), Canada, and the whole Mississippi Valley, including all the

91. What did the Dutch government name the region explored by Hudson? Where did it erect a fort?—92. What were the claims of Spain? Of France? Of England? Of Holland?

territory west of the Alleghanies. They called it *New France.* Under the name of *Virginia* the English claimed nearly the whole Atlantic coast; while on the strength of Henry Hudson's discovery the Dutch laid claim to the Atlantic coast from the Connecticut River to the Delaware; this territory they called *New Netherlands.*

Topics for Review.—Raleigh's attempt to found a colony—The London and the Plymouth Company—The Dutch in the New World—Conflicting claims of European governments.

REVIEW I.—DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS.

DISCOVERY BY COLUMBUS :—

What he hoped to find—His first voyage: the West Indies, 1492—His second voyage—His third voyage: South America, 1498—His last voyage, 1502.

OTHER DISCOVERIES :—

North America by the Cabots, 1497—The way to India by the Cape of Good Hope by Gama, 1498—The Pacific Ocean by Balboa, 1513—Round the world by Magellan, 1520.

SPANISH EXPLORERS AND SETTLEMENTS :—

Ponce de Leon in Florida—Ayllon on the coast of South Carolina and in Virginia—Narvaez in the interior of Florida—De Soto on the Mississippi—Melendez founds St. Augustine.

FRENCH EXPLORERS AND SETTLEMENTS :—

Denys on the Gulf of St. Lawrence—Verrazzano along the Atlantic coast from Carolina to Newfoundland—Cartier on the gulf and river St. Lawrence—De Soto on the Mississippi.

ENGLISH EXPLORERS AND SETTLEMENTS :—

Raleigh settles Virginia—Gosnold and Pring on the New England coast—The London and the Plymouth Company in Virginia.

DUTCH EXPLORERS :—

Henry Hudson in New Netherlands.

Part II.—The Colonies.

CHAPTER V.

Settlement of Virginia.

93. Jamestown settled.—The London Company's colony landed at Jamestown May 13, 1607 (see ¶89), and at once erected a strong palisade, or stout fence of posts. Inside this the settlers lived in tents until houses could be built. Edward Maria Wingfield was chosen president by the council, and the Church of England was established by law.

94. Sufferings of the settlers.—At first the settlers depended for food on animals killed in chase and on Indian corn and squashes obtained from the natives. But they were not accustomed to such food, and before winter fifty of them died.

95. Wingfield proved unfit to manage affairs, and John Smith, a brave and energetic man, was chosen as the only one able to control and save the colony.

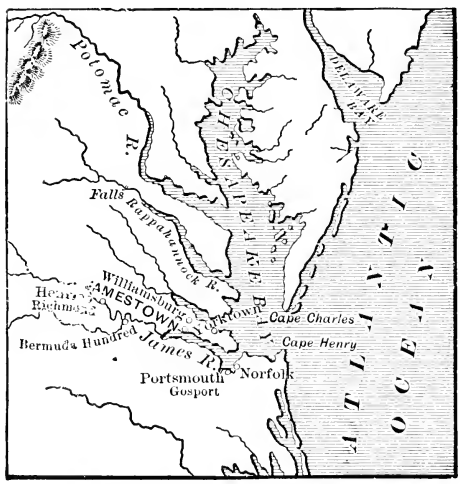
96. Smith restores order.—From the first Smith had begun to explore the country. He ascended the James River to the falls, a short distance below where Richmond now is, and made the friendship of the great Powhatan (*pow-hat-tan'*) and other Indian chiefs. He met with many adventures, and his life was often in danger.

93. When was Jamestown settled and by whom? What did the colonists erect? Who was chosen president? What was the established Church?—94. Of what did the settlers' food consist? What was the result?—95. What can you say of Wingfield? Who was chosen in his place?—96. What exploration did Smith make? With whom did he form a friendship?

97. Pocahontas and Smith.—It is related that at one time, having incurred the anger of Powhatan, Smith was about to be killed by the Indians, when Pocahontas (*po-kah-hun'-tas*), a daughter of Powhatan, threw her arms about the Englishman's neck, and by her entreaties saved his life.

98. Smith instituted vigorous measures adapted to the wants of the colonists. He insisted that all should work, and under his management things began to prosper. Unfortunately he was badly wounded by an explosion of gunpowder, and returned to England to be cured.

99. Lord De la Warr appointed governor.—Under a new charter granted by King James, Lord De la Warr, a worthy man, was appointed governor of Virginia. Commissioners were sent out to manage the colony until he could go, but they were wrecked on the Bermuda Islands.



EARLY SETTLEMENTS IN VIRGINIA.

100. The Starving Time.—Smith left the colony in a prosperous condition, but after his departure there was no one to compel the people to work. The land and everything else was common property, and the motive for work was not so great as if every man was to benefit personally

97. Who was Pocahontas? Tell the story of Smith and Pocahontas. —98. How did Smith manage the colony? What obliged him to return to Europe?—99. Who was appointed governor of Virginia under a new charter? Who were sent out to manage the colony? What happened to them?

by his exertions. Hence the fields were neglected, and provisions were soon exhausted. The Indians refused to sell or give the colonists anything, and the white man who ventured outside the palisades was killed. When all food was consumed, the people were reduced to such extremities that they ate even their own dead. This is known in Virginia history as the Starving Time.

101. Arrival of Lord De la Warr.—The surviving settlers at last abandoned Jamestown, and were sailing down the river, when Lord De la Warr appeared with new colonists and fresh supplies. The little town was again occupied, and under the wise rule of De la Warr order, industry, and prosperity were restored. The governor's health failed, however, and he returned to England.

102. New settlements.—In 1611 Sir Thomas Gates, who had been appointed lieutenant-governor, arrived with more settlers, and under him Virginia began to grow. The colonists had comfortable wooden houses lined with Indian mats, and cultivated grain and vegetables.

103. A new settlement was made further up the James River and named Henrico, but it has been since known as Richmond. Another settlement was begun at Bermuda Hundreds. The land which until now was held in common was divided among the people, and every man tried to make a comfortable home for himself.

104. It was, probably, about this time that domestic fowls and also cattle, including horses, cows, sheep, hogs, and goats, were first brought to this country, for they are not natives of the United States. The potato, too, although originally it came from South America, whence it

100. What was the condition of the colony after Smith's departure? How did the Indians act toward the colonists? By what name is this time known?—101. What did the settlers finally do? Who met them and restored Jamestown? Describe the rule of Lord De la Warr.—102. Who came out in 1611 as lieutenant-governor? What was the condition of the colonists in his time?—103. What new settlements were made? How was the land divided?

was carried to Europe, was brought to what is now the United States by some of the colonists; our North American Indians were certainly unacquainted with it.

105. Seizure of Pocahontas.—The Indians often excited alarm, and Powhatan was not over-friendly to the whites. His friendship was not increased when Captain Samuel Argall, a rough, bold man, seized Pocahontas and carried her off. She, however, was friendly to the English, and persuaded her father to make peace with them. She afterward married John Rolfe, one of the colonists, who took her to England, where she died. Some Virginia families claim to be descended from her son.

106. Rolfe was the first man in Virginia to cultivate tobacco, and he succeeded so well that others followed his example. As a result, tobacco soon became the most profitable crop in the colony.

107. Virginia destroys a French mission and seizes Port Royal.—In 1613 Argall, while on his way to Newfoundland, destroyed a Catholic mission station on Mount Desert Island, off the coast of Maine. This had been begun by the Jesuit Father Biard, under authority from the King of France. Some of the missionaries were killed, and others of the party were carried to Virginia. On a second voyage Argall took and destroyed Port Royal, the French settlement on the coast of Nova Scotia.

108. Progress of the colony.—The introduction of negro slaves, brought to the colony by a Dutch man-of-war, and the cultivation of tobacco increased the prosperity of Virginia. Respectable young women were sent over from England to become wives of the planters, and the colony grew rapidly.

104. What animals were brought out for the first time? What is said about the potato?—105. What happened to Pocahontas? To whom was she married?—106. Who first cultivated tobacco in Virginia? What was the result of the cultivation of tobacco?—107. What Catholic mission was destroyed in 1613? By whom was the mission begun? What French settlement did Argall destroy?—108. What increased the prosperity of Virginia?

109. In 1619 the first step toward liberty was made in the New World when the London Company granted to its colony the right, in part, of self-government. A new governor, named Yeardley, was sent out, who called a colonial Assembly. The colony was divided into eleven counties, or "boroughs," as they were called, each being allowed to elect two representatives or "burgesses" to the Assembly. The laws passed by the Assembly, however, had to be approved by the London Company, and, on the other hand, orders from London had to be approved by the Assembly. This Assembly met at Jamestown in July, 1619, and was the first representative assembly convened in America.

110. The great Indian massacre.—The Indian chief who succeeded Powhatan hated the English and formed a plot to destroy them. He sent his warriors to the different settlements to offer game, corn, and fruit for sale. They were received without suspicion by the trusting people, when suddenly, on March 22, 1622, the treacherous savages fell upon the widely-scattered plantation and butchered three hundred and forty-seven men, women, and children.

111. Jamestown saved.—One of the colonists, named

109. When was the first step toward liberty made in the New World? What did Governor Yeardley do? How was the colony divided? By whom did the laws passed by the colony have to be approved? When and where was the first representative assembly convened in America? —110. How did Powhatan's successor carry out his plot? How many of the settlers were killed?

Pace, while in bed, was warned of his danger by a friendly Indian. Pace arose, dressed himself, and crept silently down to the river side. There he got a boat and rowed in all haste to Jamestown. An alarm was sent out, and the people flocked into the fort, leaving their homes to be destroyed. The Indians feared to attack the fort and retired. Then the colonists sent out expeditions which destroyed the Indian villages and all their crops. Most of the tribes fled toward the Potomac.

112. Virginia a royal colony.—King James made the Indian massacre an excuse for annulling the charter of the Company, and Virginia became a royal colony, to be governed in future by the king. Laws, known as the "Navigation Acts," were enacted whereby the colony was restricted from buying anywhere except in England, from selling its products anywhere except in England, and from transporting its merchandise except in English vessels.

113. Bacon's Rebellion.—These laws created great dissatisfaction and nearly caused a revolt. For the time this was prevented, but it required only a grievance and a leader to bring it on. The colonists suffered from the hostility of the Indians, and sought protection from the governor, Sir William Berkeley. Not receiving any, they rose in 1676, denounced the governor as a tyrant and a traitor, and under the command of Nathaniel Bacon, a brave, rich, eloquent, and popular man, attacked and punished the savages. Bacon died soon after, and Berkeley tried and executed twenty-three prominent men and confiscated their property.

114. During the rebellion Jamestown was burned; it was never rebuilt, and Williamsburg was made the capital

111. How was Jamestown saved? How did the Virginians punish the Indians?—112. What did King James do at this time? What did Virginia become? What restriction was put upon the trade of Virginia? —113. Were the colonists satisfied with these laws? Did the colonists receive proper protection from Governor Berkeley? What did the colonists do? Under whose lead did they attack the savages?

of Virginia. Here the college of William and Mary, the oldest college in Virginia, was founded in 1692.

115. At last peace settled on Virginia, and the colony prospered rapidly. The production of tobacco—its chief staple—was large and the sale correspondingly great. Many of the settlers were men of good family, used to the refinements of life. When the poorer colonists began to grow rich and became more cultured, they gradually mingled with their more favored brethren, until they became as one, and the result was a community distinguished, even to our own day, for its intelligence, refinement, and open-handed hospitality.

Topics for Review.—Tell about:—

Jamestown—Where the settlers dwelt at first—John Smith, his life and work in Virginia—The Starving Time—Lord De la Warr—Sir Thomas Gates—The division of the land—Introduction of domestic animals—Pocahontas—The first step toward liberty—The Indian massacre—Restrictive laws and Bacon's Rebellion—The character of the colonists.

CHAPTER VI.

The Settlement of Massachusetts.

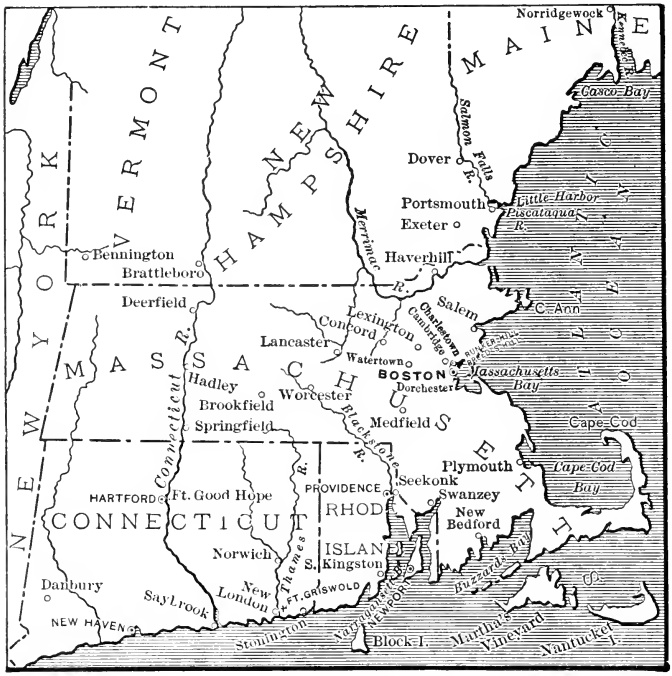
116. New England received its name from Captain John Smith, who made a voyage to that part of the country in 1614, and drew a map of the coast.

117. The Puritans.—Rich companies holding grants from the king had vainly attempted to establish an English settlement north of Virginia; but a few poor men succeeded where the wealthy corporations failed.

118. The Separatists or Puritans, a sect of Protestants in England, who were persecuted for differing from the Established Church, sought refuge in Holland, and settled

114. What became of Jamestown? What college was founded in Virginia?—115. How did Virginia prosper when peace was established? Describe the character of the colonists.—116. From whom did New England receive its name?

at Leyden (*li'dn*). But they were not contented there, and resolved to make for themselves a new home in America.



MAP OF NEW ENGLAND.

119. The voyage of the Mayflower.—Having obtained a grant from the Virginia Company, a party of Puritans, or Pilgrims, as they were called, sailed from Delft Haven, Holland, in July, 1620, in a small vessel called the *Speedwell*. They landed at Southampton, England, where they were joined by others, and took passage on the *Speedwell* and a larger vessel, the *Mayflower*. The *Speedwell* was found to be unseaworthy; both vessels put back, and some of the

118. What was the condition of the Separatists or Puritans in England? Where did they seek refuge?

Pilgrims abandoned the voyage. Others, however, determined to go on, and on September 6, 1620, one hundred and two men, women, and children sailed in the *Mayflower* from Plymouth. After a long and stormy voyage they cast anchor at Cape Cod, and began to look up a suitable place for a settlement.

120. The landing on Plymouth Rock.—Having found a desirable place, not within the boundaries of the Virginia Company's grant, a plan of government was drawn up, and the Pilgrims elected John Carver their governor. Then they landed at Plymouth Rock, Massachusetts, December 21, 1620.

121. The winter settlement.—The Pilgrims began at once to build rude houses, but it was a difficult task, and their dwellings were put up at such intervals as storms of sleet and snow would permit. A large building was erected as a meeting house, and on its roof was planted a cannon, so as to make a kind of fort against the Indians. The natives, however, did not molest them; but cold and scanty food brought on sickness, and before spring Governor Carver, his wife, and forty-two others died.

122. William Bradford succeeded Carver, and was governor for many years. The military defence of the settlement was entrusted to Miles Standish, an old soldier, who had joined the expedition in Holland.

123. The Indians befriend the Pilgrims.—In the spring Massasoit (*mas-sa-so'it*), the most powerful Indian chief in that part, made a treaty of friendship with the Pilgrims, which was never broken. Great help was received from Squando, an Indian who had been in England and could speak English. He taught the settlers when to take fish

119. Describe the voyage of the Pilgrims. Where did the *Mayflower* cast anchor?—120. Who was elected governor by the Pilgrims? When and where did they land?—121. How did the Pilgrims build their meeting house? What happened during the winter?—122. Who succeeded Carver as governor? To whom was the military defence of the settlement intrusted?

off the coast, and how to raise Indian corn, using the poorer kinds of fish to enrich the sandy soil.

124. Progress of the colony.—There was no idleness in the little colony; the settlers cleared fields, and when others arrived in the autumn Plymouth began to look prosperous. Wild fowl and deer were abundant, the crops and fisheries succeeded, and the furs obtained helped to pay the debts of the colony in England.

125. In 1622 Canonicus (*kah-non'ee-kus*), chief of the Narragansetts (*nah-rah-gan'setts*), threatened war, and, as a defiance, sent to Plymouth a bundle of arrows tied with the skin of a rattlesnake. Bradford sent back the skin stuffed with powder and balls. Canonicus took the hint that they were ready to fight, and peace was maintained.

126. Settlement of Massachusetts Bay.—Encouraged by the success of Plymouth, some Puritans in England obtained a grant from the Plymouth Company, and in 1628 John Endicott came over with fifty or sixty people; he founded Salem and established a government of some scattered settlers on the coast. In the following year, March 4, 1629, a royal charter was granted to "the Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay;" two hundred emigrants came over, and on their arrival Endicott sent some of them to form a settlement at Charlestown.

127. The Great Emigration.—In 1629 the Massachusetts Company resolved to transfer the management of the colony from England, where it had been conducted until then, to members who should settle in Massachusetts. This created a new interest in the colony, and in 1630 occurred what is known as the Great Emigration: nearly a thousand settlers came over in seventeen vessels, bringing horses and cattle, with tools and implements of all kinds.

123. Who was Massasoit? How did he treat the Pilgrims? What can you say of Squando?—124. What progress did the colony make?—125. What did Canonicus do? What answer did he get?—126. Who founded Salem? What charter was granted in 1629? Who came over under this charter, and what town did they settle?

Most of the people settled in Boston, Watertown, and Dorchester. The colony of Massachusetts Bay was organized with John Winthrop, its leader, as governor, and the Congregational Church was established.

128. Growth of Massachusetts Colony.—Having greater means than the settlers elsewhere, the Puritans of Massachusetts were even more prosperous. This attracted others of the same political and religious opinions, and within ten years after Winthrop's arrival twenty thousand came to settle in the country.

129. The education of the people was looked after. In 1636 the general court or legislature appropriated money to found a school. It was established at Cambridge, and Rev. John Harvard having left one-half his estate and all his library to it, the institution took the name of Harvard College. It is now the oldest and the best endowed college in the United States.

130. We learn in this chapter that, to escape religious persecution at home, the Puritans of England sought refuge in Holland and finally in America. Here they landed at the now famous Plymouth Rock, and at once began a settlement. Suffering and sickness overtook them, but in spite of all obstacles they persevered, were befriended by the Indians, and by untiring industry grew prosperous. In time they were joined by other immigrants, and gradually the great Massachusetts Colony was developed.

CHAPTER VII.

Connecticut, New Hampshire, and the United Colonies of New England.

131. Settlement of Saybrook.—As the population on the New England coast increased, some began to look for more

127. What took place in 1630? What did the settlers bring? Who was their leader? Where did they settle?—129. How was Harvard College founded?

pleasant places to settle. In 1630 the Council of Plymouth granted the soil of Connecticut (*kon-net'ee-kut*) to Lord Warwick, but he soon transferred it to other proprietors.

132. The Dutch had planted a fort on the Connecticut River, and some people from Plymouth in Massachusetts established a post at Windsor (*win'zer*) in 1633, to trade with the Indians. There in 1635 John Winthrop, son of the governor of Massachusetts, began a settlement at the mouth of the Connecticut River, which was called Saybrook, from the names of two English noblemen who were proprietors of Connecticut.

133. Settlement of Hartford.—The first settlers in Connecticut went by water, following the coast, but in June, 1636, about a hundred people set out from Massachusetts Bay under Rev. Thomas Hooker and John Hayne to march by land, driving their cattle and carrying their household goods through the woods, until they reached their destination, and founded Hartford.

134. Settlement of New Haven.—In April, 1638, the colony of New Haven was organized by the Rev. John Davenport and Theophilus Eaton, and the Bible was adopted as their code of laws. They protected the neighboring Indians against their enemies the Mohawks, and the colony prospered under the rule of Eaton, who was governor for twenty years. The three colonies, Saybrook, Hartford, and New Haven, were united under one charter in 1665 and took the name of Connecticut.

135. Religious intolerance in New England.—The Puritans and Independents who settled in Massachusetts and Connecticut really separated from the Church of England, though they did not openly admit they had. They did not accept the Thirty-nine Articles, which embrace the

131. To whom did the Plymouth Company grant Connecticut?—132. Who planted a fort on the Connecticut River? Who established a post at Windsor? What settlement was founded by John Winthrop in 1635?—133. How did the settlers reach Connecticut?—134. What three colonies united and took the name of Connecticut?

doctrines of that Church, nor use its Book of Common Prayer, nor believe in ordination by bishops, and in order to enjoy freedom of worship they left their native land.

136. But they were not willing to allow others the freedom which they claimed for themselves. They even sent back to England some colonists who wished to use the English prayer-book, and compelled every one to attend the Congregational meeting houses.

137. Roger Williams and his doctrines.—In 1631 Roger Williams, a talented young minister, came out to New England, but was not welcomed by the other ministers, because he wanted them openly to renounce the Church of England, and not compel any one to attend their services.

138. Williams was invited to Salem, but was soon obliged to leave, and went to Plymouth. From there he was finally banished by order of the general court, and orders were issued to arrest him and send him back to England.

139. Williams escapes.—Williams fled, however, in the midst of winter, and took refuge with Massasoit and Canonicus, for he had learned the language of the Indians and won their friendship. Protected by them, he began a set tlement at Seekonk. But this place came under the gov ernment of Plymouth, so he removed to Narragansett Bay, and in June, 1636, with five companions, planted Providence on land received by gift from the Indians.

140. Anne Hutchinson and her followers.—Soon after this Mrs. Anne Hutchinson began to hold religious meetings in Boston. Her doctrines were condemned, and though many in Massachusetts sided with her, she was driven out of the colony. She sought refuge with the Dutch, in what is now Westchester County, New York. There she and her family were massacred by the Indians.

136. What can be said of the religious intolerance of the Puritans?—137. Why was Roger Williams not welcomed by the ministers in New England?—138. What happened to him in Plymouth?—139. Where did he take refuge when banished from Plymouth? When did he found Providence? From whom did he get the land?

141. Coddington founds Rhode Island.—In 1638 William Coddington, a supporter of Mrs. Hutchinson, settled at Rhode Island, on land obtained from the natives. The colony so increased in numbers that in the following year a portion of the settlers moved in a southerly direction and laid the foundation of Newport. Both colonies prospered, and in 1644 Roger Williams went to England and obtained a charter uniting the two settlements under one government, called the Rhode Island and Providence Plantation.

142. Settlement at Little Harbor and at Dover.—Two years after the landing of the Pilgrims Sir Ferdinando Gorges (*gor'jez*) and Captain John Mason, two Englishmen, obtained from the Council of Plymouth the territory between the Kennebec and Merrimac rivers. In 1623 a small party employed by the proprietors settled at Little Harbor, near Portsmouth, and at Dover; but the growth of the colony was slow.

143. Wheelwright founds Exeter.—The Rev. John Wheelwright, a friend of Mrs. Hutchinson, purchased of the Indians the territory between the Merrimac and Piscataqua, and founded Exeter on the latter river. Later on Mason obtained the same territory by charter in England, and gave it the name of New Hampshire.

144. The Articles of Confederation.—With the French on one side of them and the Dutch on the other, the colonies in Massachusetts and Connecticut soon felt the necessity of uniting to protect themselves both against their neighbors and against the Indians, who began to show hostility.

145. Commissioners appointed.—In 1643 Plymouth, Massachusetts, Connecticut, and New Haven appointed delegates, that is, persons to represent them, who drew up Articles of Confederation for "The United Colonies of

141. What two settlements were made by Coddington? Who obtained the charter?—142. Where are Little Harbor and Dover situated? When were they settled and by whom?—143. Where is Exeter situated? What name did Mason give to the territory?—144. What led the colonies of Massachusetts and Connecticut to unite?

New England." Each colony elected two commissioners, who were to meet annually to manage the affairs intrusted to them. The commissioners met in September, 1643, and elected John Winthrop president. The union of these colonies lasted for forty years.

146. In the hope of gaining the friendship and aid of New England against the Mohawks, the French in Canada sent Father Druillettes (*drweel'yet*), a missionary among the Indians on the Kennebec, to Boston. The good priest was well received, but the commissioners declined to open trade with Canada or to help the French.

147. The Puritans of New England were very strict in manners. They suppressed Christmas and other Church holidays, allowed no sports or amusements, and kept Sunday very severely. They punished by law all who did not attend their meeting house. They established solemn fast days, and set apart one day in the autumn as a day of thanksgiving.

Topics for Review.—Tell what you can of—

1. The settlement of New England, Connecticut, and Plymouth—2. Of the intolerance of the Puritans—3. Of the "United Colonies of New England."

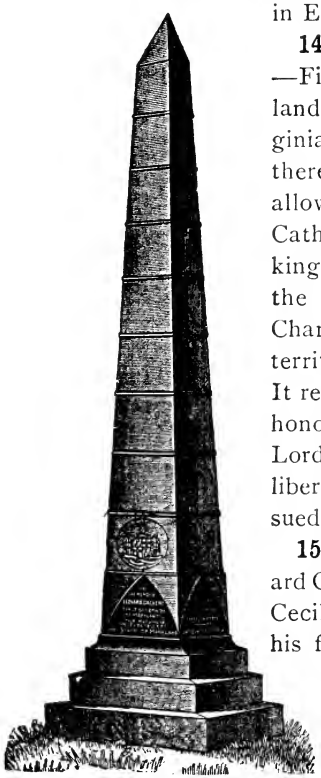
CHAPTER VIII.

Maryland, New Netherlands, and New Sweden.

148. Lord Baltimore.—While the New England colonies were thus growing, another English colony was formed north of Virginia. Sir George Calvert (Lord Baltimore), a convert to the Catholic Church, had been interested in the settlement of Virginia. He obtained a patent for a

145. What colonies formed The United Colonies of New England?—146. Who was sent by the French in Canada to New England, and for what purpose? What did the commissioners decide to do?—147. Describe the manners and customs of the Puritans of New England.

colony in Newfoundland, and hoped to make it a refuge for Catholics who were cruelly oppressed and persecuted in England and Ireland.



MONUMENT TO LEONARD CALVERT, ERECTED IN 1891, AT OLD ST. MARY'S, MARYLAND, BY THE STATE OF MARYLAND.

149. Calvert's patent for Maryland.—Finding the climate of Newfoundland too severe, Calvert visited Virginia, hoping to remove his colony there, but the authorities refused to allow him to settle because he was a Catholic. He then appealed to the king for a grant of land, and though the Virginians opposed his petition, Charles I. gave him a patent for a territory north of the Potomac River. It received the name of Maryland in honor of Queen Henrietta Maria. Lord Baltimore obtained a wise and liberal charter, but before it was issued he died.

150. The expedition.—In 1633 Leonard Calvert was sent out by his brother Cecil, the second Lord Baltimore and his father's heir, with about twenty gentlemen and nearly three hundred farmers, mechanics, and laborers, to settle Maryland. All the leading men of the party were Catholics, and the emigrants were accompanied by two Jesuit priests, Father Andrew White and Father John Altham.

151. The Ark and the Dove.—After some delay, the

148. What was the object of Sir George Calvert in obtaining a patent for a colony?—149. Why was Calvert refused permission to land in Virginia? For what territory did he receive a patent? Why was the settlement called Maryland?—150. Who was sent out to settle Maryland? By whom were the emigrants accompanied?

Maryland Pilgrims set sail on November 22, 1633, in two vessels, the "Ark" and the "Dove." Four months later they entered Chesapeake Bay and, ascending the Potomac River, anchored near St. Clement's Island. There they landed, and Father White celebrated Mass for the colonists, on the feast of the Annunciation, March 25, 1634. A cross was then raised, and possession taken of the country.

152. St. Mary's founded.—Leonard Calvert selected for the settlement an Indian town, six or seven miles above the mouth of what is now called the St. Mary's River, and there founded St. Mary's, the oldest town in Maryland. Instead of driving the natives away by force, he purchased the land and houses from them, giving them in return axes, hatchets, and cloth. A large wigwam was prepared for a chapel, and a strong palisade was made around the dwellings.

153. Prosperity of the colony.—Lands were at once laid off for the leading men, who employed those whom they had brought over to clear and cultivate the ground. Cattle and horses were obtained from Virginia, and under the rule of Leonard Calvert all prospered. Maryland was the first colony planted in this country that never suffered from famine or trouble with the Indians.

154. Clayborne's revolt.—The only disturbance in Maryland was made by William Clayborne, who, under a permission from the governor of Virginia, had a trading post on Kent Island. Clayborne refused to recognize the authority of Lord Baltimore, but was compelled to submit, though he gave much trouble afterward.

155. Missions and toleration.—The Maryland pilgrims always kept on friendly terms with the Indians, and the Jesuit Fathers, with others of their Society who had joined

151. When did the Maryland Pilgrims reach this country? Where did they anchor? When was the first mass said for them and by whom?—152. How did Leonard Calvert treat the natives? What town did he found?—153. How did Maryland prosper? From what did it remain free?—154. What is said of Clayborne?

them, established missions among them, converting many of the chiefs and people to Christianity. Puritans oppressed by the laws of Virginia were welcomed to Maryland, for Lord Baltimore proclaimed it a "free soil for Christianity," and no one was molested on account of his religion.

156. The first Maryland Assembly.—By their charter the people of Maryland had the right to make their own laws, and the first assembly was held at St. Mary's in February, 1635; but as most of the early records of the colony were subsequently destroyed, no account of the proceedings of this Assembly has come down to us.

157. The Dutch West India Company.—The Dutch West India Company, which was incorporated in 1621, obtained from the government in Holland a grant of New Netherlands (See ¶ 90, 91, 92), and in the spring of 1623 thirty families were carried out to settle on Manhattan Island, at Fort Nassau on the Delaware, near where Camden is now, and at Fort Orange, near the old fort on the Hudson.

158. A prosperous colony.—Other vessels followed with settlers, horses, cows, sheep, and swine. The Company also granted large tracts of land to wealthy men who sent out persons, as tenants, to clear and cultivate the land. The settlers were thrifty and industrious and the colony grew prosperous. In 1628 they were glad to receive a Dutch Reformed or Calvinist clergyman, who came out to minister to them.

159. Delaware settled.—The Dutch claimed all the country from the Connecticut River to the Delaware. In order to maintain their claim Peter Heyes, in 1631, erected a fort, and began a settlement, the first in Delaware, with

155. Who established missions in Maryland? What did Baltimore call Maryland? Why?—156. What right was granted to the people of Maryland by their charter? When and where did the first Assembly meet?—157. What Company obtained a grant of New Netherlands? Where did the settlers locate?—158. Who else came to this colony? What was the character of the settlers?

thirty souls, on Lewes Creek near Cape Henlopen. In January, 1633, the Dutch purchased land of the Indians on the Connecticut River and built Fort Good Hope, in order to prevent the English from settling there.

160. The Dutch were Calvinists in religion, like the people of New England, but they were a cheerful, happy people. They were fond of amusement, and kept the old Church holidays, New Year's, Christmas, Easter, Whitsunday, which the Puritans detested. St. Nicholas was in Europe the patron of seafaring men and of children, and the Dutch settlers in America continued to honor his day.

An Early Dutch Settler.

161. The Swedes settle on the Delaware.—While the Dutch were thus endeavoring to maintain their colony, another nation began a settlement within the limits claimed by them. Peter Minuit, who was appointed the first governor, entered the Delaware in 1638 with two Swedish vessels, and began a settlement. He erected his first fort near the spot where Wilmington now stands, and called it Christiana, in honor of the young queen of Sweden. He

159. Where was the first settlement in Delaware?—160. Describe the habits and customs of the Dutch?

brought over emigrants, plenty of supplies, and a Lutheran minister to attend the people.

162. Progress of New Sweden.—The colony took the name of New Sweden, and gradually extended. In 1643 Printz, the Swedish governor, erected a fort on Tinicum Island, below the present city of Philadelphia. There he took up his residence, and others soon settled near him.

163. The Dutch have Indian wars and reduce New Sweden.—After a time the Dutch provoked the Indians to war, and the colony suffered severely from attacks of the natives. The Indians, however, were finally subdued. The Dutch, then, under Governor Stuy-ve-sant, compelled the Swedes on the Delaware to submit to them. New Sweden was thus incorporated into New Netherlands in 1655.

Topics for Review.—Tell about:

1. The first Lord Baltimore—2. His colony in Newfoundland—3. His hopes—4. Maryland—5. The second Lord Baltimore—6. The religion of the colonists—7. Who were welcomed to Maryland—8. The Dutch West India Company—9. Delaware—10. The conquest of New Sweden—11. New Netherlands.

CHAPTER IX.

The Continent and its Inhabitants.

164. By the time the English colonies were formed almost all the coast of the continent and much of the interior had been explored.

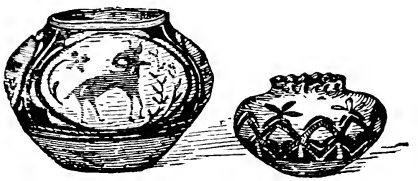
165. The Indians.—The Indians in all parts of the country were found to be very much alike. Their appearance and general mode of life have been described (¶ 16).

166. Pueblo Indians.—The most civilized Indians in our territory were the Pueblos (*pwā'blōse*) and Moquis (*mo'kees*) of New Mexico. These nations lived in houses several

161. What other nation settled within the limits claimed by the Dutch? What is said of Peter Minuit?—162. What name did the colony take? What is said of Printz, the Swedish governor?—163. When was New Sweden conquered by the Dutch?

stories high, built of stone or of bricks dried in the sun and constructed with considerable skill.

167. The natives raised cotton and spun it, as well as the wool of the Rocky Mountain sheep, making cloth which they used for garments. They were expert in making vessels of clay to hold water, and had mines from which they obtained a kind of turquoise (*tur-koiz'*) which they carved and sold. None of the Indians had learned to use iron or any other metal with the exception of copper; out of this some of the natives hammered rude arrow-heads and rings.



INDIAN POTTERY.

168. The Algonquins.—A great nation known as the Algonquin occupied the country from Lake Superior to the mouth of the St. Lawrence and from the mouth of the Ohio to Chesapeake Bay. The chief tribes of this great nation were the Abnakis (*ab-nah'kees*) in Maine, the Pequots in Connecticut, the Mo-he-gans in New York, the Delawares in New Jersey and Pennsylvania, and the Miamis (*mee-ah'mees*), Illinois, Chippewas (*wahs*), Ottawas (*wahs*), Sacs and Foxes, all lying near Lake Michigan, and the roving Shawnees.

169. The Algonquins seldom had any fixed towns; they lived in tents made of boughs or covered with skins or mats. They cultivated very little ground, and depended on hunting and fishing for their support.

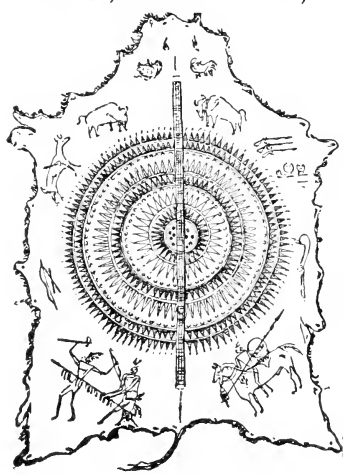
170. Iroquois tribes.—In the midst of the Algonquins were various tribes of another nation, the Iroquois, extend-

166. Who were the most civilized of the Indian tribes? How did they live?—167. What did the natives do with cotton and the wool of the Rocky Mountain sheep? In what were they expert? What metals had they learned to use?—168. Over what territory were the Algonquins spread? What were the chief tribes of this nation, and where did each lie?—169. How did the Algonquins live?

ing from Lake Huron to Carolina. The most important of these were the Hurons in Canada, the Five Nations in New York, the Susquehannas in Pennsylvania, and the Tuscaroras and Cherokees in Carolina.

171. These Indians were more civilized than the Algonquins. They lived in towns surrounded by strong palisades; they had long houses with a frame of poles covered with bark; and they cultivated the ground, raising corn, beans, squashes, and tobacco. They were fierce and cruel. The Five Nations, when they obtained fire-arms from the Dutch, conquered or destroyed many of the nations around them.

172. The Mobilians.—The Mobilian tribes: the Creeks, Choctaws, and Chickasaws, occupied the shores of the Gulf of Mexico from Florida to the Mississippi. They were fierce and brave. They lived in towns, their habitations being often in mounds. Each town had a large house where the chiefs held their councils, and where dances were performed. These Southern tribes all cultivated the soil. On the Mississippi the Indians had fine, large canoes, hollowed out of trees. The Spanish missionaries converted many of the tribes in Georgia and Florida and did much to civilize them.



Ornamented Buffalo Robe.

173. The Dakotas.—West of the Mississippi the tribes of the great Dakota nation extended from the upper waters

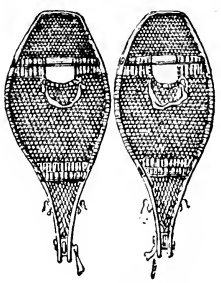
170. What were the chief tribes of the Iroquois nation?—171. How did they live? What was their nature?—172. What was the condition of the Mobilian tribes?

of the Mississippi to the Arkansas (*ăr'kan-sah*). To this family belonged the Sioux (*sōō*), Iowas, Missouris, Winnebagoes, and Arkansas. These tribes lived almost entirely by hunting; their houses were tents made of bison skins.

174. Western tribes.—The Pawnees, Mandans, and some other tribes lived in houses shaped like a bee-hive and made of poles woven together and covered with earth. On the great buffalo plains roamed the fierce Apaches and Comanches.

175. Canoes and snow-shoes.—The Indians showed most skill in their canoes which were made of bark and were very light but serviceable. Their snow-shoes were very ingenious; they consisted of a large frame of light wood held in shape by a network of sinews. On these the Indian could go rapidly over the frozen snow in pursuit of deer and other animals.

INDIAN BARK CANOE.



INDIAN SNOW-SHOES.

176. Indian words adopted into English.—As the Algonquins were near most of the early English colonies, many of their words were adopted by the whites. *Wigwam*, meaning an *Indian hut*, *squaw*, an *Indian woman*, *tomahawk*, an *Indian ax*, *moose*, a kind of *elk*, are all Algonquin words. Besides, the names of Massachusetts, Connecticut, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin, Mississippi, and Arkansas all come from the same language.

177. Wampum.—The Indians on the sea-coast made a kind of beads from shells, which they called wampum

173. What tribes belonged to the Dakota nation? How did they live? —174. What can you tell of the Pawnees and Mandans? Of the Apaches and Comanches?—175. In what way did the Indians show skill?—176. Mention some Indian words that have been adapted into English.

(*wom'pum*). This was used by many tribes not only for ornament, but also as money, and wampum had a known value in each colony. Strings and belts of it were given and received by the natives in making treaties, and by figures which they marked on these belts the Indians could afterward tell the terms of the treaty.

Topics for Review.—Tell about the Indians: Their different habitations and their work—The influence on our language of association with them.

CHAPTER X.

England and France Seek to Control North America.

178. The Puritan revolution in England.—All the English colonies in America had been settled under grants from the Kings of England, James I. and Charles I., or from Companies established by them. But the Puritan party in England became so powerful that it defied King Charles I., and civil war followed. Parliament raised an army to oppose the king, and this army in a very short time took all power from Parliament. King Charles I. after several battles fled to Scotland, but was given up to his enemies. He was tried and beheaded in 1649.

179. The Commonwealth.—A new government, called the Commonwealth of England, was set up with Oliver Cromwell as Lord Protector. The New England colonies held the same religious opinions as the English Puritans, and acknowledged the new government; but they resisted the attempts of Parliament to control their affairs.

180. During the civil war in England Virginia had fresh troubles with the natives. In 1644 the Indians again attempted a general massacre, but were defeated and fled after killing 300 people. Virginia still adhered to the

177. What is wampum?—178. Under what grants had the English colonies been settled? What party gained power in England? What followed? What was the fate of King Charles I.?—179. What was the new government called? How did the New England Puritans act?

king in the person of Charles II., but when in March, 1652, commissioners came over in an English frigate, the colony submitted to the Commonwealth.

181. The Puritans in Maryland.—Lord Baltimore in England acknowledged the Commonwealth, but, armed with power from Parliament, Richard Ingle came to Maryland, drove out Governor Calvert, plundered many plantations, and sent Father Andrew White, the Apostle of Maryland, and other Jesuit Fathers in chains to England. There Father White was tried under the penal laws. His jailer, seeing him fast constantly, told him he would not have strength to stand on the scaffold, but the holy man replied that this very fasting gave him strength to suffer all for Christ. Father White was finally released, but did not return to America. While with the colony he studied the language of the Maryland Indians, and wrote a grammar and a catechism in their dialect.

182. The Maryland Assembly establishes religious freedom.—Governor Calvert soon recovered his authority, and in April, 1649, the Assembly of Maryland passed a famous law which granted liberty of conscience to all who professed faith in Christ. This confirmed the liberal policy under which Maryland had been ruled for fifteen years.

183. Civil war in Maryland.—In 1654 Richard Bennett and William Clayborne of Virginia came to Maryland as Parliament commissioners, and set up a new government. An assembly was called and by it Catholics were deprived of all rights in Maryland. Stone, governor under Lord Baltimore, attempted to dispute the possession of the government with the new-comers, but he was defeated at Severn River. The Puritans, with barbarous cruelty, hung four prisoners who fell into their hands. Stone himself

180. What trouble did Virginia have with the natives? When did Virginia submit to the Commonwealth?—181. How did Lord Baltimore act? What did Ingle do? What can you say about Father White?—182. What did Governor Calvert do when he recovered authority?

was condemned to death, but the soldiers refused to carry out the sentence. Lord Baltimore went to England and tried to recover his authority, but he did not succeed completely while the Commonwealth lasted.

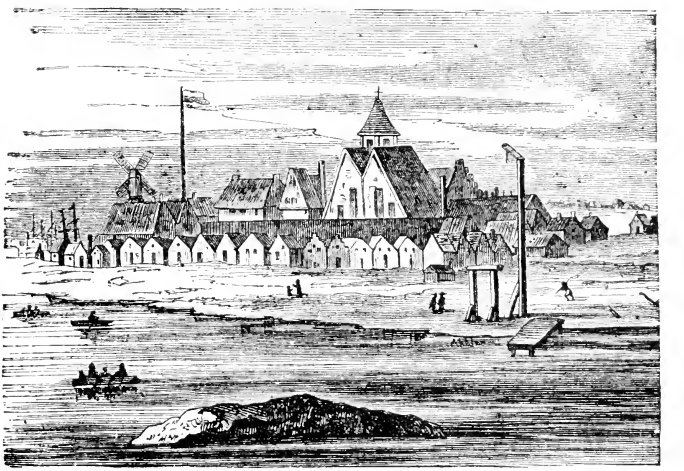
184. Intolerance in Massachusetts.—Massachusetts, relying on the protection of the Puritans in England, showed great intolerance. Baptists were compelled to attend the Congregational meetings or were fined and flogged. Quakers, who began to come to the country in 1656, were more severely punished. Laws were passed to imprison and flog them; and two years after the general court made it death for a banished Quaker to return.

185. Four Quakers hanged.—Under these cruel laws four Quakers, one of them a woman, were hanged on Boston Common. One Quaker, Wenlock Christison, who had been banished on pain of death, returned and, boldly defying the magistrates, demanded to be tried by the laws of England. The people began to see the injustice of their rulers, and Christison and twenty-seven of his friends were freed from prison.

186. Plans of James, Duke of York.—In 1660 the people of England, weary of Puritan rule, recalled the son of Charles I., who ascended the throne under the title of Charles II. He is often called the "Merry Monarch," because he was indolent and fond of pleasure. His brother James, Duke of York, was a man of thought and action. He formed plans to unite and extend the English colonies in America, and to check the French and Spaniards. He proposed to take New Netherlands from the Dutch, and build up new colonies between New England and Maryland, and also to settle the country south of Virginia.

183. Who arrived in Maryland in 1654? What was the result of their coming? How did the Puritans act? What is said of Stone? What did Lord Baltimore do?—184. How were the Baptists treated in Massachusetts? What was done to the Quakers?—185. Were any Quakers put to death? What is said of Wenlock Christison?—186. What was the Restoration? Who became king? What plans were formed by James, Duke of York?

187. New Netherlands becomes New York.—James obtained from his brother, King Charles II., a patent for all the country between the Connecticut and the Delaware, on the ground that it always belonged to England, and that the Dutch were intruders. A squadron under Richard Nicolls was sent out, and it was aided by troops from New Haven and Long Island.



NEW YORK IN 1664.

188. Governor Stuyvesant's rule was very tyrannical, and as the people showed no disposition to assist him when the fleet appeared before the fort at New Amsterdam, Stuyvesant surrendered, and the city passed under English rule on the 29th of August, 1664. New Netherlands became the colony of New York, New Amsterdam, the city of New York, and Fort Orange on the Hudson took the name of Albany.

189. Progress of New York.—The colony of New York

187. For what territory did James obtain a patent? What did he send out?—188. What did Governor Stuyvesant do when the fleet appeared before New Amsterdam? What names were changed in consequence?

was governed for some time under a liberal code known as the Duke's Laws; English settlers came into the colony, and the Dutch, who numbered about fifteen hundred, grew accustomed to English laws and habits.

190. In October, 1683, Governor Thomas Dongan, an Irishman and a Catholic, called the first assembly. This body passed a bill of rights securing the liberty of the people, and established freedom of conscience for all.

191. Dongan secures the friendship of the Five Nations.—Recognizing the value of the friendship of the Indians, Dongan made a treaty with the Five Nations. This warlike people occupied the territory from the Mohawk to the Niagara. By this treaty Dongan hoped to carry out the aim of the Duke of York to keep the French north of the great lakes. Dongan also tried to secure for New York the fur trade of the Western Indian tribes, and succeeded so well that in 1684 the Senecas alone brought into Albany more than ten thousand beaver skins.

192. New Jersey formed into an English colony.—Soon after obtaining his patent, the Duke of York transferred his right to the country between the Hudson and Delaware rivers to Sir John Berkeley and Sir George Cartaret. Very few people had settled there, and it was important to have it occupied by English subjects. This district became the colony of New Jersey, and received that name in compliment to Sir George Cartaret, who at one time had been governor of the Island of Jersey, in England. Settlements were begun at Middletown, Shrewsbury, Bergen, and Elizabethtown, and on May 26, 1668, the first colonial legislature assembled at the latter place.

193. The Province of Carolina.—Under the impulse given

189. How was New York governed?—190. When was the first Assembly called in New York, and by whom? What bill did the Assembly pass?—191. What powerful allies did Dongan secure for the English side? What trade did he secure?—192. To whom did the Duke of York cede the country between the Hudson and the Delaware? What was this country named, and why? Where were English settlements formed?

by the Duke of York, several English noblemen and gentlemen obtained from Charles II. a grant of the territory between Virginia and Florida. This became the Province of Carolina. A small settlement was made near Albemarle, and in 1663 a second settlement was begun on the Cape Fear River by Sir John Yeamans, who was appointed governor. Both these settlements were within the limits of what afterward became North Carolina. Emigration increased, the place grew, and it is said that in three years it contained eight hundred souls.

194. Charleston founded.—In 1670 three shiploads of emigrants from England, conducted by Joseph West and William Sayle, sailed into Ashley River and began a settlement which took the name of Charleston; this was the beginning of South Carolina. The colony soon received additions from England and the West Indies, with some French Protestants.

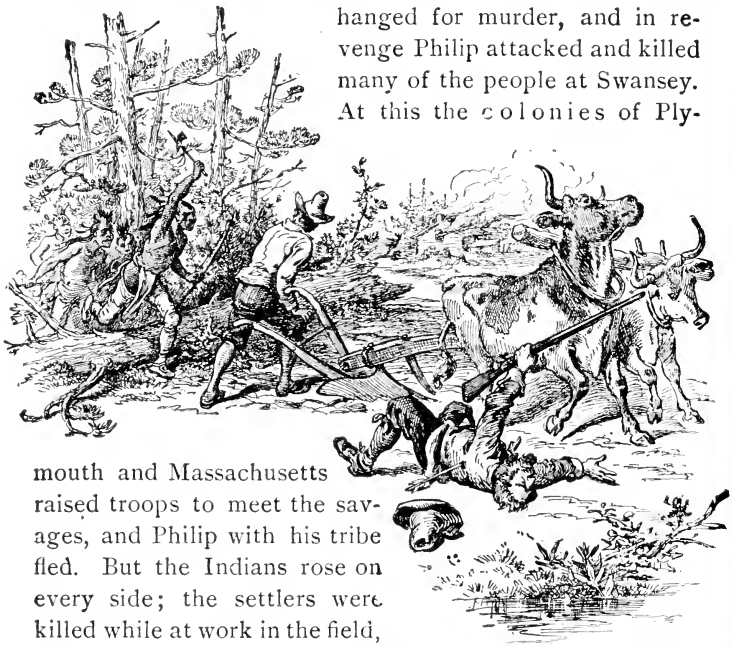
195. King Philip's War in New England.—While England was thus extending her colonies along the Atlantic coast, New England was threatened with ruin by a great Indian war. Philip, son of Massasoit, the friend of the Pilgrims, saw that the whites would soon overrun the whole country and deprive the Indians of their lands and hunting grounds. To prevent this, he went from tribe to tribe, and urged the chiefs to unite with him in an attack on the settlers.

196. Missions among the Indians.—Little had been done in New England to convert or civilize the Indians. The Rev. John Eliot, a Protestant clergyman, and a few others labored earnestly, but their progress was slight. Eliot translated the whole Bible into an Indian language, and copies of this book yet exist. The converts, however,

193. What grant was obtained by several English noblemen? What was the province called? Where did Sir John Yeamans form a settlement?—194. By whom was Charleston founded?—195. What is said of Philip, son of Massasoit?

who were known as "praying Indians," were looked upon with suspicion by both their own people and the whites.

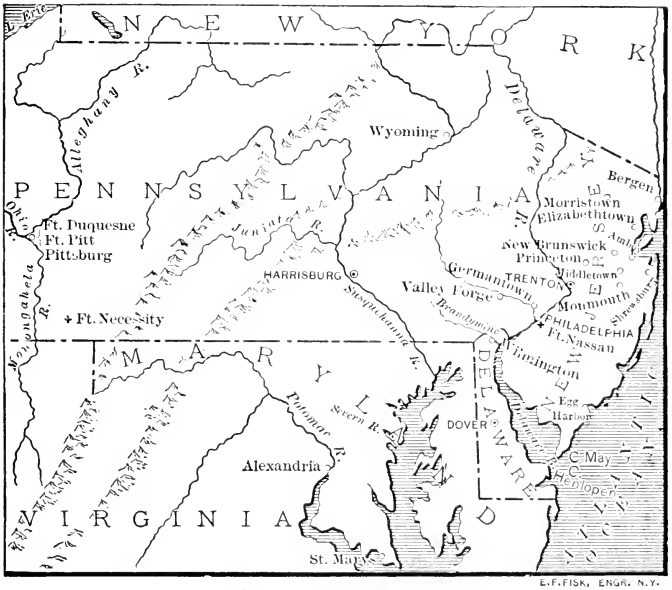
197. Philip begins the war.—In 1675 three Indians were hanged for murder, and in revenge Philip attacked and killed many of the people at Swansey. At this the colonies of Plymouth and Massachusetts raised troops to meet the savages, and Philip with his tribe fled. But the Indians rose on every side; the settlers were killed while at work in the field, while travelling, or on their way to church, and Brookfield, Deerfield, Hadley, and Springfield were burned.



198. The Narragansetts destroyed.—The commissioners of the United Colonies raised a force of one thousand men, and in December, 1675, attacked the Narragansetts at South Kingston. After a loss of seventy killed, the New Englanders captured the Indian fort and set fire to it, and the old men, women, and children perished by hundreds in the flames.

196. What Protestant clergyman labored for the Indians? What did he do with the Bible?—197. When and where did Philip begin the war? What was done by the colonists? What towns were burned by the Indians?—198. What happened to the Narragansetts?

199. The Indians continue the war.— Rendered desperate, the Indians continued to fight; Lancaster, Medfield, and several other places were destroyed by them and most of the people massacred. Then the United Colonies made constant marches into the Indian territory, surprised the Indian camps, and kept up the war until the death of

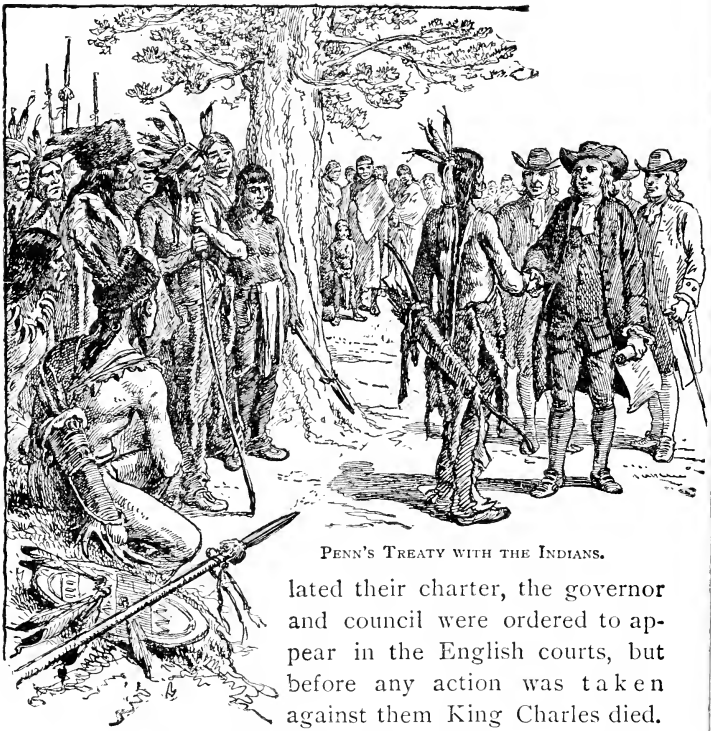


MAP OF PENNSYLVANIA.

Philip. That great chief was killed by one of his own men in August, 1676. Twelve New England towns were destroyed in this war.

200. Charles II. and Massachusetts.—The cruelty of the government of Massachusetts to the Quakers, and its opposition to laws passed by Parliament for regulating the trade of the colonies, made Charles II. resolve to proceed against that colony. Under the claim that they had vio-

199. How did the Indians retaliate? How long was the war kept up? By whom was Philip killed? What was the result of this war?



PENN'S TREATY WITH THE INDIANS.

lated their charter, the governor and council were ordered to appear in the English courts, but before any action was taken against them King Charles died. Connecticut and Rhode Island were favored by the king and received new charters, and in July, 1679, New Hampshire was separated from Massachusetts and became a royal province, with a governor appointed by the king.

201. Settlement of Pennsylvania.—William Penn was the son of Admiral Sir William Penn, and on the death of his father the young man inherited a fortune, besides large claims on the government. In 1681 he obtained a grant of the country west of the Delaware River, to which the name of Pennsylvania was given.

200. What made King Charles II. take measures against Massachusetts? What was the result of his action? What more did the king do?
201. Who was William Penn? For what country did he obtain a grant? What was it named?

202. There were some Swedish and other settlers on the territory, but Penn sent out emigrants under control of his kinsman William Markham to begin a city. He obtained from the Duke of York the territory now known as Delaware, and came over himself in 1682. He organized the government, giving great powers to the people, and not only established complete toleration, but made all offices in the province open to Christians of all denominations. In 1683 he laid out the city of Philadelphia.

203. Penn's treatment of the Indians.—From the first Penn directed that the Indians should be paid for their lands, and that they should always be treated fairly. He made treaties with the native tribes, and thus Pennsylvania was saved from the horrors of Indian war.

204. Extension of British colonies in America under Charles II.—After the settlement of Maryland in 1634 no new English colony was begun until Charles II. ascended the throne. Under that monarch, as we have seen, many new colonies were formed, so that English settlements occupied the whole coast. These were New Hampshire, Massachusetts with the District of Maine, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania with the counties on the Delaware; Maryland, Virginia, and the Carolinas.

205. The colonies under James II.—When the Duke of York, a Catholic, became king under the name of James II he followed the policy of Charles. The courts in England declared the charter of Massachusetts to be forfeited and that colony became a royal province. James annexed New York to New England, and appointed Edmund Andros governor. Under his rule colonization was encouraged, the laws equally administered, and freedom of con-

202. What other grant did Penn obtain? How did he organize the government? What city did he lay out?—203. How did Penn treat the Indians?—204. Name the colonies as they existed under Charles II.

science secured. Thus freedom of religion to all was first distinctly guaranteed by a Catholic prince.

206. The "Charter Oak."—While acting as governor Andros issued orders to Connecticut to surrender its charter. The colony refused to do this, and in October, 1687, Andros went to Hartford, and at a meeting of the Assembly, which was prolonged until midnight, demanded its charter. It is related that the light was extinguished suddenly, and in the darkness the charter was carried off, and hidden in the hollow of an oak-tree. This tree became known as the *Charter Oak*, and was carefully preserved for nearly one hundred and seventy years after.

SEIZING THE CHARTER.

Topics for Review.—The notable events mentioned in this chapter are:—1. The revolution in England, by which King Charles I. was driven from his throne and Oliver Cromwell became head of the new government—2. The passage of a law in Maryland establishing religious freedom in that colony to all Christians—3. The restoration of the monarchy in England—4. The capture of New York by the English—5. The settlement of Pennsylvania—6. The accession of the Duke of York to the English throne.

CHAPTER XI.

THE ENGLISH COLONIES UNDER WILLIAM AND MARY.

207. The English Revolution of 1688.—The Protestants of England wished to depose King James II. Accordingly they invited William, Stadtholder of Holland, who had married Mary, the eldest daughter of King James, to

205. What did James II. do? Who was appointed governor of New England?—206. Tell the story of the Charter Oak.

come over and occupy the English throne. William arrived in England on November 5, 1688, and he and Mary were proclaimed King and Queen. Finding himself deserted by all King James fled to France; there his cause was taken up, and the result was a war between that country and England.

208. The result in New England of the English revolution.—When the news reached America, the authority of William III. and Mary was at once acknowledged. As the new king sent out no officers or instructions to the colonies, the people took matters in their own hands. At Boston Governor Andros, who had been something of a tyrant, was arrested, all the royal officers were removed, and the old government under the charters was restored in Massachusetts, Plymouth, Rhode Island, and Connecticut.

209. Leisler in New York.—In New York Jacob Leisler, a captain in the militia, seized the fort, and made himself governor under pretence that he was acting in the interests of the king; but when William III. sent out Colonel Henry Sloughter in 1691 as governor of New York, Leisler refused to give up the fort. He was forced to surrender, however, was at once arrested, tried for treason, and being found guilty, was hanged on the day following his trial. This led to violent party spirit in New York, which did not die out for many years.

210. Religion in New York.—Protestantism was now in the ascendant. Under the administration of Fletcher, who became governor of New York in 1692, an attempt was made to establish the Church of England as the State Church, and the next governor, the Earl of Bellomont, an Irish Protestant, forced through the Assembly a bill ex-

207. What political change took place in England in 1688? What did King James do? What was the result?—208. What was the result in New England of the English Revolution?—209. What did Leisler do in New York? What was his fate?

pelling all Catholic priests from the territory of New York, and punishing them with death if they returned.

211. The persecution of Catholics in Maryland.—In 1689 John Coode, a man of very bad character, formed "An association in arms for the defence of the Protestant religion," and pretending that the Catholics of Maryland were plotting with the northern Indians for a general massacre of the Protestants, committed many cruelties. He sent a petition to William III. asking the king to take the province into his own hands.

212. Without any form of law William deprived Lord Baltimore of his rights as proprietor in Maryland, and sent over Lionel Copley as governor. The capital was removed from St. Mary's to Annapolis; Catholics were excluded from office, deprived of the right of voting, and loaded with double taxes. All Catholic schools were forbidden. The Church of England was established by law, and Catholics were taxed to support it.

213. Similar laws were passed in other colonies. Some years later all Catholic worship was prohibited by law, but when Queen Anne ascended the English throne, mass was permitted to be said in private houses.

214. William III. makes Massachusetts and Pennsylvania royal provinces.—In 1691 King William, by a new charter, united Massachusetts Bay and Plymouth into one colony called Massachusetts. Sir William Phips was sent out as governor, and he appointed the other royal officers who were needed to manage affairs.

215. Pennsylvania, also, was taken from its proprietor, William Penn, and Benjamin Fletcher was made governor of that province. The people, however, so strongly op

210. What was done by Governor Fletcher and his successor?—211. Who was John Coode, and what did he do?—212. How did William III. act in regard to Maryland? What changes followed?—213. What laws were passed in other colonies? What did Queen Anne do?—214. What did William III. do in 1691? Who was made governor of the new colony?

posed this appointment that Penn, finally, had his rights restored. Up to this time no English king had made the royal power so supreme, or deprived Americans of the rights they enjoyed.

216. New Jersey and Carolina.—New Jersey had surrendered its power to the Crown in 1688, and during the whole reign of William III. was without a settled government. In Carolina great confusion prevailed until 1695, when John Archdale, a Quaker, was sent out as governor. He established a government that satisfied both proprietors and people, and many settlers were attracted to the province. He cultivated the friendship of the Indians, and friendly relations sprung up with the Spaniards at St. Augustine. At one time he ransomed four Catholic Indians who had been taken from the Florida missions and were about to be sold. These he returned to the governor at St. Augustine. Soon after an English vessel was wrecked on the Florida coast, and the Spaniards showed their appreciation of Archdale's kindness by treating the unfortunate people with great hospitality. The cultivation of rice was begun at Charleston in 1696, and proved so successful that that grain became a profitable crop.

217. The colonies at war with France.—The accession of William III. to the English throne involved the colonies in a war with France (see ¶ 207). Incited by Leisler, a party of 1500 Iroquois Indians suddenly burst on the village of Lachine (*lah-sheen'*), in Canada, at break of day, set fire to the houses, and in less than an hour massacred two hundred persons. The people of Canada, led to expect no mercy, prepared to carry on war in the same way. They sent out parties of Indians, accompanied by a few colonists, to attack the frontier towns in New England

215. How did William III. treat Pennsylvania? How did the people act?—216. What was the condition of New Jersey under King William? What did John Archdale do? What progress did Carolina make under his administration?

and New York. The towns of Dover and Salmon Falls in New Hampshire, Pennaquid and Casco in Maine, and Schenectady in New York were taken and destroyed, and many of the settlers killed or carried away as prisoners.

218. Phips takes Port Royal and attacks Quebec.—In 1690 delegates from all the English colonies met at New York, and drew up a plan for the conquest of Canada. Sir William Phips with an expedition sailed to Port Royal in Acadia, which surrendered at once. Afterward Phips sailed with thirty-two vessels and two thousand men against Quebec, and an army of New York and New England troops with Indians of the Five Nations was to march against Montreal. The army, however, was repulsed by Count Frontenac, governor of Canada, who then hastened to repel the hostile fleet.

219. When Phips appeared before Quebec, and demanded the surrender of the place, he was received with scoffs. He then opened fire and landed troops, but the latter were soon forced to retreat to the vessels, and the ships suffered so much damage from the French cannon that they were compelled to drop down the river and finally abandon the attack. Then they made their way back to Boston. The expedition to Canada resulted only in a loss of men and money for the colonies.

220. The witchcraft trials in Massachusetts.—At this gloomy time an excitement about witchcraft, that is, being in league with evil spirits, broke out and spread over all New England. It reached its height in 1692, at Salem, where an Indian woman, a servant, was accused of bewitching two girls. Her arrest was followed by that of many others, men and women. The accused were often severely flogged, and twenty innocent persons were

217. To what barbarities did Leisler incite the Indians? What did the Canadians do after the massacre at Lachine?—218. What can you tell of Phips' expedition? What did Frontenac do?—219. How was Phips received when he appeared before Quebec? What was the result of his expedition?

hanged, among them George Burroughs, a minister, before the people realized that they had been deceived.

Topics for Review.—Tell what you can about :—

1. James II. of England—2. William and Mary—3. The war between the colonies and France—4. The attack on Canada—5. The witchcraft trials in Massachusetts.

CHAPTER XII.

QUEEN ANNE'S WAR—INDIAN WARS—FATHER RALE.

221. Queen Anne's War.—King William's War ended in 1697, but the colonies did not long enjoy peace. When Queen Anne came to the throne of England in 1702, all Europe was involved in a war about the succession to the crown of Spain. Canada wished to avoid the horrors attending such a conflict and the French governor proposed to New York and New England that they should remain at peace. To this New York agreed, but New England preferred to fight.

222. Ravages of the French in New England.—War parties of French and Indians attacked the settlements in Maine; Deerfield, in Massachusetts, was destroyed by fire, March 1, 1704, forty-seven of its inhabitants were killed, and one hundred and twelve were carried off as prisoners. On August 29, 1708, Haverhill, "a cluster of thirty cottages and log-cabins" was attacked and the settlers butchered.

223. Acadia conquered by the English.—New England had long desired to see Acadia occupied by the English, and more than once unsuccessfully attempted its conquest. Finally, in 1710, six English vessels, joined by thirty of New England, with four New England regiments, sailed for Port Royal. The garrison was small, weak, and out of food, and there was little trouble in compelling the

220. What is said of witchcraft in Massachusetts? What happened at Salem in 1692? What terrible results followed this delusion? 221. What caused war in Europe in 1702? What did Canada propose? What did New England prefer?—222. What settlements in Massachusetts were attacked?

French to surrender. Since then the country has been known as Nova Scotia, and Annapolis, near the old French town of Port Royal, named in honor of the queen, became the capital.

224. A fruitless expedition against Quebec.—Flushed with victory, the colonies desired the conquest of Canada. For that purpose a formidable expedition was fitted out in 1711 under command of Sir Hovender Walker. It comprised more than fifty vessels carrying seven regiments of English veterans and many New England troops. The fleet left Boston on the 30th of July, and about the middle of August ascended the St. Lawrence, to take Quebec and conquer Canada. At the same time an army from New England and New York, with about six hundred Iroquois, was to attack Montreal.

225. The French made all preparations to defend the threatened cities, but the hostile fleet, through the incompetence of its admiral, was wrecked, and many of the men and vessels perished; the army sent against Montreal was forced to retreat.

226. South Carolina attacks Florida.—In 1702 Governor Moore of South Carolina marched at the head of a force to attack St. Augustine, Florida, which belonged to the Spaniards. The people fled to the fort, but Moore burned the town with its churches and a valuable library. On the appearance of two French vessels, however, Moore retreated by land to South Carolina.

227. Three years later, in 1705, Moore led a force of South Carolina troops and savages against the Catholic Apalache Indians. Ayubale (*i-u-bah'lay*), one of the towns, was taken, and a Spanish and Indian force, coming to the relief of the other settlements, was defeated. Moore burned at the stake or butchered four Franciscan mission-

223. When was Acadia taken by the English? By what name is it now known? What city became its capital?—224–225. What expedition was sent out in 1711? What was the result?—226. What place did Governor Moore attack in 1702? Why did he retreat?

aries with many Spanish and Indian prisoners, and carried off nearly a thousand Apalaches to be sold as slaves.

228. French attack on Charleston.—In 1706 a French fleet attacked Charleston, but was repulsed with the loss of one of the vessels and many men. Soon after the Tuscaroras, a powerful Indian tribe on the Neuse River, indignant at encroachments on their lands, attacked the settlements in Carolina. A force was sent against them, and after some fighting the Tuscaroras abandoned their old territory and marched to the North, where the Iroquois adopted them as a sixth nation.

229. The treaty of Utrecht.—The treaty of peace concluded at Utrecht April 11, 1713, closed the colonial war. By that treaty Nova Scotia was given up to England, but no boundary lines were fixed between the English and the French in America. This soon led to disputes on the frontiers.

230. Indian war in Carolina.—On the death of Queen Anne, George, Elector of Hanover, Protestant descendant of the Stuarts, became King of England. The English colonies in America now began to recover from the effects of the long wars. The Indians in Carolina, however, soon renewed hostilities, and a number of tribes formed a plot for a general massacre. The whites were attacked on Good Friday, 1715. Many were killed and the others, abandoning their homes, fled to Charleston. Governor Craven called out the militia, and in a bloody battle on the river Salkehatchie (*sal-ke-hat'chee*) defeated the Indians.

231. Carolina a royal province.—Being dissatisfied with

227. What was the object of Moore's expedition in 1705? Of what act of cruelty was he guilty?—228. By whom was Charleston attacked in 1706? With what result? What Indians committed ravages in Carolina? What became of the Tuscaroras?—229. What province was given up to England by the treaty of Utrecht?—230. Who became King of England after Queen Anne? What did the Indians of Carolina do? When were the whites attacked? What was the result of the battle on the Salkehatchie?

the manner in which the proprietors governed the province, the people complained to George I. He made it a royal province, and sent out Francis Nicholson as governor. At this the proprietors surrendered their rights to the people, and Nicholson, who was a man of experience, established a firm government, and won the friendship of the Indians.

232. Indian wars in Maine.—At the North the Abnakis, the Indians of Maine, grew restless under the continual encroach-

THE KILLING OF FATHER RALE.

ments and injustice of the English settlers, and began hostilities. The authorities of Massachusetts pretended to attribute the enmity of the Indians to Catholic influence and resolved to destroy the Catholic missions and ravage the Indian country.

231. Of what did the people of Carolina complain? What did George I. do? What is said of Governor Nicholson?—232. Why did the Abnakis begin hostilities? What did the authorities pretend? What did they do?

233. At Norridgewock, an Abnaki settlement on the Kennebec, Father Sebastian Rale, a zealous Jesuit, had gathered about him a flourishing village, and there he labored for nearly thirty years. For this devoted man the New Englanders showed a bitter hatred. A reward was offered to the one who would kill him, and the governor of Massachusetts sent an expedition against the town. The faithful priest and his people escaped, but his strong-box and his manuscript dictionary of the Abnaki language were carried off; the latter is now preserved in Harvard College Library.

234. In 1724 another expedition of soldiers and Mohawk Indians was sent against Norridgewock; the town was surprised, and in the slaughter that followed many women and children were killed. The chalice and other sacred vessels used on the altar were profaned and the church was burned. Father Rale might have escaped, but he would not desert his dying people; he attended one after another till he himself was killed near the foot of his mission cross. To add to the barbarity of his murder, his scalp, torn from his head, was sent in triumph to Boston.

235. Immigration.—The colonies soon began to extend their settlements, and carried on commerce with one another and with the West Indies. Many immigrants began to come over from Europe; Germans, known as Palatines, established themselves in Pennsylvania and on the Hudson River; people from the north of Ireland, whose manufactures had been ruined by English laws, settled in Pennsylvania and in Maine.

236. French defences.—Alarmed at the increase of the English settlements, the French began to build forts to protect the territory which they claimed, especially the country west of the Alleghany Mountains. They erected

233. Tell the story of Father Rale's zeal and devotion.—234. What happened in 1724?—235. How did settlements and trade extend? Where did the Germans settle? The people from Ireland?

a strong fortress at Louisburg on the island of Cape Breton (*breh-ton'*), a fort at Crown Point on Lake Champlain, another fort at Niagara, and strengthened the settlement and fort established at Detroit in 1700.

Topics for Review.—We have learned in this chapter about:—

1. Queen Anne's War—2. The capture of Acadia—3. The expedition against Quebec—4. The close of the Colonial War—5. The Indian troubles in Maine—6. Killing of Father Rale—7. The increase of immigration.

CHAPTER XIII.

INTERCOLONIAL WARS—KING GEORGE'S WAR—THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WARS.

237. Settlement of Louisiana.—In 1699 Iberville (*e'ber-vil*), a Canadian officer in the French navy, was sent out with a fleet and two hundred colonists to begin the settlement of Louisiana. He entered the Mississippi River, and, after examining the country, established a post at Biloxi, on a bay in the present state of Mississippi. The colony did not prosper, however, and in 1702 it was removed to Mobile, and finally to New Orleans, which was founded in 1718. At these posts churches were established and missions begun among the Indians.

238. Progress of Louisiana.—The progress of Louisiana was slow for the reason that the King of France granted the colony to companies and speculators, who cared little for the good of the people. A post was established at Natchez, another on the Arkansas River, and in the Illinois country there were settlements at Kaskaskia and Cahokia. Thus the French controlled the fur trade of the Mississippi valley; besides, they cultivated the fertile soil and worked the mines of copper and of lead.

236. How did the French endeavor to protect their territory? Where did they build forts?—237–238. Who settled Louisiana in 1699? In what parts were settlements made? What can you say of the progress of Louisiana? Of what advantage were the different posts to the French?

239. The settlement of Georgia.—For nearly fifty years the kings of England had done little for the colonies, but had twice involved them in war. No new colony had been begun after the settlement of Pennsylvania. In 1732 General James Oglethorpe, a brave and benevolent man, by a charter from King George II. secured the country between the Savannah and the Altemaha (*al-ta-mah-hah'*), and erected it into the province of Georgia. As Oglethorpe wished to provide an asylum for poor debtors and other unfortunate persons, the new province was placed under a corporation for the benefit of the poor. Protestants and Jews were welcomed, but by its charter Georgia excluded Roman Catholics.

240. Founding of Savannah.—In January, 1733, Oglethorpe with about one hundred and twenty immigrants ascended the Savannah River and chose as the site of his first town the high bluff on which the city of Savannah now stands. The settlers were received as friends by the Indians, who belonged to the Creek nation, and Oglethorpe soon made treaties with all the tribes within the limits of Georgia. To protect the colony Oglethorpe built a fort called Frederica (*fred-er-ee'kah*) on St. Simon's Island. New colonists soon came over, among them Jews, Lutherans, Moravians, and a number of Scotch Highlanders.

241. Georgia and Florida involved in war.—In 1739 England declared war against Spain, and the following year Oglethorpe with an army of regulars and colonial troops invaded Florida. He captured Fort Picolata and attacked the Spanish fort at St. Augustine, but this was so gallantly defended by Monteano (*mon-tee-ah'no*), the governor of Florida, that the English were compelled to withdraw and retired to Savannah.

239. What territory did Oglethorpe secure? What did he wish to provide? Who were excluded from Georgia by its charter?—240. What did Oglethorpe do in January, 1733? What is said of the Indians? Who were among the colonists who came over?—241. What can you tell of the war between Georgia and Florida?

242. Spanish attack on Savannah.—In July, 1742, Monteano with a fleet attacked the forts in Georgia. Oglethorpe fell back on Savannah, whereupon the Spanish troops landed to capture the town, but Oglethorpe with his Highlanders met and defeated them in two engagements.

243. The French and the Natchez.—In 1729 the French colony of Louisiana became involved in a terrible Indian war. The Natchez, the most civilized of the Indian tribes, were so badly treated by the commander of the French post at their village that they formed a plot to massacre all the whites. The other tribes entered into the plot, and on the morning of November 28, 1729, the bloody work began, and before noon nearly all the Frenchmen in the colony, among them two missionaries, were murdered. The women and children were kept as slaves.

244. The news spread terror through the colony. Perier (*pair'ee-ā*), the governor, raising a force, and with the aid of Indian allies, suddenly attacked the Natchez and defeated them. Those who were not killed were sent to the West Indies to be sold as slaves; a few escaped and joined other tribes, but as a nation the Natchez were extinct.

245. Illinois expedition against the Chickasaws.—To secure the eastern valley of the Mississippi to France, it was necessary to conquer the Chickasaws, the determined enemies of the French. Accordingly two forces were sent against them, but both were defeated, and Dartaguette (*dar-ta-gĕt'*), the gallant commander of one force; the Jesuit Father Senat, the chaplain; and the brave Canadian Vincennes (*van-sen'*), were captured and burned at the stake.

246. The New York Negro Alarm.—The South and the West had their wars, but for some years the northern

242. What do you know of the attack on Savannah?—243. With what Indian tribe was Louisiana involved in war in 1729? What followed?—244. What became of the Natchez?—245. Why was it necessary for the French to conquer the Chickasaws? What was the result of the expeditions sent against them?

colonies prospered and increased both in wealth and population. Trouble, however, arose in New York in 1741. At that time some fires broke out, and the people conceived the idea that the negro slaves had formed a plot to burn the city. Great excitement prevailed; a number of slaves were tried, convicted, and burned alive, while several whites suspected of being in the plot were hanged. An anti-Catholic spirit developed at the same time, and John Ury, an inoffensive man, was executed, chiefly because he was suspected of being a priest.

247. King George's War.—In 1744 France and England became engaged in a war in regard to the succession of Maria Teresa to the throne of Austria. This brought on hostilities between the northern English colonies and Canada. An expedition was sent out from New England under Colonel William Pepperell against Louisburg, the strong French fortress on the island of Cape Breton. New England supplied the troops; New York, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania gave aid in money and stores. Though the New England troops were inexperienced and the fortress was well defended, Louisburg surrendered June 16, 1744.

248. The treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.—A treaty of peace was made at Aix-la-Chapelle (*āks lah-shah-pĕl'*), in Europe, in 1748, and by its terms Louisburg, which had cost the people of New England so dearly, was restored to France. This treaty fixed St. Mary's River as the boundary between Florida and Georgia, but the boundaries between the French and the English provinces at the north were left unsettled.

249. France fortifies the frontiers.—The English colonies were dissatisfied at the manner in which they were treated. Parliament prevented them from carrying on commerce

246. What was the Negro Alarm in New York? What was done during the excitement?—247. What led to the war between the English colonies and Canada? What can you tell of the attack on Louisburg?—248. What was the result of the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.

with other countries, and though they gave freely of their lives and means to overthrow the French, the latter were left as powerful as ever, thanks to the action of the English government.

250. In the mean time, in order to fortify the boundaries which they claimed, the French erected new forts from Lake Erie to the Alleghany River. Then they drove away English traders, and began a fort at the junction of the Ohio and Monongahela, which they named Fort Duquesne (*du-kane'*), in honor of the governor of Canada.

251. Virginia endeavors to check the French.—The limits of the French colonies were not well known, and Governor Dinwiddie of Virginia believed the French posts to be on the territory of his province. Accordingly he sent a letter to the commander of the French posts demanding his authority for erecting forts on English soil. The bearer of this letter was George Washington, then just twenty-one.

252. Washington.—George Washington was born by the side of the Potomac, in Westmoreland County, Virginia, February 22, 1732. When he was eleven years old his father died, leaving a large estate, and on the part which would be his when he became of age George lived with his mother, his younger brothers and his sisters. His education was of the most simple kind. Besides reading, writing, and arithmetic, he learned book-keeping and, afterward, studied surveying. He excelled in all athletic and manly sports, and a place is still pointed out at Fredericksburg where he flung a stone across the Rappahannock.

253. Even as a boy his virtue, honesty, and sense of justice were so marked that he was chosen to settle dis-

249. Why were the English colonies dissatisfied?—250. What did the French do to fortify the boundaries which they claimed? Where was Fort Duquesne?—251. What did Governor Dinwiddie do? Who was the bearer of the letter?—252. Tell what you know of George Washington.

putes among his playmates. He was remarkable for firmness of character; in all his undertakings his perseverance and completeness were noticeable; nothing was half-done or done hurriedly; he found time to do whatever was needed to be done and to do it well. Although his education was limited, his manners were refined and elegant; this may be attributed in part to his mother's teaching and example and in part to his intimate association with the Fairfax family, one of the leading families of Virginia.

254. Just after completing his sixteenth year Washington undertook a surveying expedition, in which he gained a very thorough knowledge of the frontier country and the habits of the Indians. When he was nineteen years old Virginia, in anticipation of trouble with Canada, was divided into military districts, and, young as he was, Washington was appointed adjutant-general, with the rank of major and the pay of one hundred and fifty pounds sterling (about $750) a year.

255. Troops are sent against the French.—Washington executed the commission with which Governor Dinwiddie had intrusted him well and promptly, but not without danger to himself. As he was returning to Virginia a treacherous Indian attempted to kill him, and in crossing the half-frozen Alleghany River on a raft he narrowly escaped drowning.

256. He reached home in safety, however, and on his report that the French were making active preparations to hold the disputed country, Governor Dinwiddie called out a regiment of colonial militia. The regiment was under Colonel Frye, and Washington was placed second in command.

257. Washington's first action.—Joined by a party of friendly Indians, Washington took the advance, and pushed

253. What is said of Washington's virtues and character?—254. What did he become at the age of 19?—255. How did he execute his commission? What happened as he was returning to Virginia?—256. What was the result of Washington's report? Under whose command was the regiment?

on to prevent the French from occupying an important position at the head of the Ohio River, between the Allegheny and Monongahela branches. He was too late, however; the French had driven off an English party, and were building Fort Duquesne.

258. Learning that a French force had been sent against him, Washington retreated; but when a report reached him that a body of French were at a place called Great Meadows, he marched there, made a sudden attack, May 28, 1754, and defeated the French, killing their commander Jumonville (*zhu-mon-veel'*). This skirmish was the beginning of a long and bloody war between France and England.

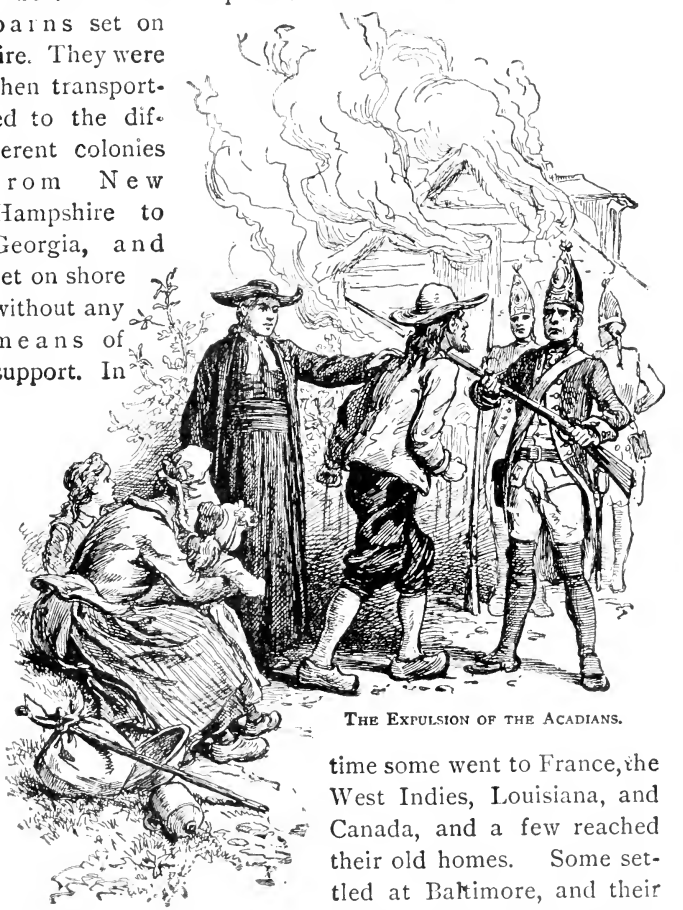
259. Washington surrenders at Fort Necessity.—At Great Meadows Washington constructed Fort Necessity, in which to entrench his men until re-enforcements arrived from Virginia. While here Colonel Frye died, and the command devolved on Washington. Shortly after a large French force under De Villiers (*deh veel'yā*) laid siege to the fort, and after a brave resistance Washington surrendered on condition that he should be allowed to return to Virginia with all his men.

260. The fate of the Acadians.—Although Nova Scotia had been in possession of the English for more than forty years, most of the people were descendants of the old French settlers, and were called Acadians, or Neutral French. They were a happy, industrious people with well-cultivated farms. The English coveted these farms and, pretending to fear that the Acadians would help the French when war began, suddenly surrounded seven thousand of these poor people by troops, and, without any trial or indictment, drove them on board ships which had been pre-

257. What did Washington attempt?—258. What success had he at Great Meadows?—259. What fort did Washington construct at Great Meadows? What happened to Colonel Frye? What was the result of the siege of Fort Necessity?

pared to receive them. In the hurry families were separated never again to be reunited.

261. From the ships the Acadians saw their houses and barns set on fire. They were then transported to the different colonies from New Hampshire to Georgia, and set on shore without any means of support. In time some went to France, the West Indies, Louisiana, and Canada, and a few reached their old homes. Some settled at Baltimore, and their descendants are yet to be found there. The principal charge against these people was that they were Catholics.



THE EXPULSION OF THE ACADIANS.

260. Who were the Acadians? What were their habits? Why did the English want to get rid of them? What did the English do?

Topics for Review.—Tell what you know about:—

1. The settlement of Louisana—2. Of Georgia—3. King George's War—4. George Washington—5. The Acadians, who they were, what happened to them.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WARS, CONTINUED—CANADA PASSES INTO THE HANDS OF THE ENGLISH.

262. Braddock's expedition.—Although war had not yet been declared between France and England, both countries prepared for active campaigns in America. The English government sent out a large force of veteran troops under command of General Braddock. Plans were made for attacking the French at three different points, Crown Point on Lake Champlain, Fort Niagara, and Fort Duquesne. Against the latter place Braddock resolved to march in person. His army was increased by a large force of militia raised in Virginia.

263. On July 9, 1755, the English general crossed the Monongahela, but was suddenly attacked by a small force of Canadians and French. Braddock knew nothing of the mode of fighting in America, nor would he listen to the advice of Washington, who was his aide-de-camp. He brought up his main force, but kept his men drawn up in a close body, while the French and the Indians, after their first attack, posted themselves behind trees, whence they kept up a deadly fire, driving the British from their cannon and gradually forcing them back.

264. Most of the English officers were killed or wounded, and Braddock himself fell mortally wounded and died four

261. What became of the Acadians? What was the principal charge against them?—262. Who was sent out to command the English forces? What were Braddock's plans?—263. What took place July 9, 1755? What is said of Braddock? How did the Indians fight?

days later. A panic ensued and all fled. The retreat was covered by the remnant of Virginia troops under Washington. He had two horses shot under him and four bullets passed through his coat in that engagement.

265. General Johnson defeats Dieskau.—The expedition against Fort Niagara, like that against Fort Duquesne, failed, but General William Johnson of New York, who advanced against Crown Point, was more successful; he erected Fort Edward between Lake George and the Hudson. The French under General Dieskau (*dee-ess'ko*) moved against this fort, and defeated Colonel Williams, who had been sent with a detachment of a thousand men to watch the enemy.

266. Dieskau then attacked Johnson, but was badly wounded and taken prisoner, and his army was repulsed and compelled to retreat. In spite of this victory, Johnson did not feel strong enough to attack Crown Point; he erected Fort William Henry on the banks of Lake George and then returned to Albany.

267. Montcalm takes Oswego.—In 1756 the Marquis of Montcalm (*mone-kham'*), the successor of Dieskau, with a force of about three thousand men suddenly attacked the two English forts at Oswego on Lake Ontario, and captured them with 1400 men and a hundred cannon. Colonel Mercer, the English commander, was killed.

268. Fort William Henry is captured by Montcalm.—The following year, while Lord Loudon, who had been sent out from England as commander-in-chief, was planning great expeditions, Montcalm appeared before Fort William Henry with a large army. Colonel Munro, who was in command of the fort, held out for a long time, but as no

264. What was the result of the battle? What is said of Washington? —265. What is said of the expedition against Niagara? What fort did General Johnson erect? By whom was it attacked?—266. What followed Dieskau's attack on Johnson? What did Johnson do after repulsing Dieskau?—267. What took place in 1756?

force came to his aid he surrendered August 9, 1757. Montcalm destroyed the fort and then returned to Canada.

269. Louisburg surrenders.—In 1757 William Pitt, afterward Earl of Chatham, became prime-minister of England, and the affairs of the colonies immediately attracted his attention. An active, energetic man himself, he at once replaced the incompetent Loudoun by General Abercrombie, and made vigorous preparations for carrying on the war.

270. In June, 1758, an army of upward of twelve thousand men under General Amherst, aided by a large fleet commanded by Admiral Boscawen, attacked Louisburg on Cape Breton. The garrison resisted bravely, but was finally forced to surrender, and on July 21st the fort again passed into the hands of the English (see ¶ 248). Two years later, by orders from England, the fortress was demolished, and to-day scarcely a trace remains of the fortification.

271. Montcalm defeats Abercrombie.—Before the fall of Louisburg, which was a severe blow to the French, Montcalm raised the hopes of his countrymen by a victory at Ticonderoga. At this point the French had erected Fort Carillon. General Abercrombie led a strong army to besiege it. He landed his troops, July 6th, at the extreme north end of Lake George, but in the dense forest through which it had to pass the van was attacked and driven back, and Earl Howe, a brave officer, who was second in command, was killed. Then Abercrombie sent his whole force to attack the French lines, but Montcalm in person directed the defence, and the English were forced to withdraw after sustaining a loss of nearly 2000 men.

272. Bradstreet takes Fort Frontenac.—An expedition

268. Who came out from England as commander-in-chief? What was the result of Montcalm's attack on Fort William Henry?—269. Who became prime-minister of England in 1757? Whom did he appoint commander-in-chief?—270. What occurred at Louisburg in June, 1758?—271. What can you say of the attack of the English on Fort Carillon? What was the loss of the English?

under Colonel John Bradstreet was more successful. With 3000 men Bradstreet crossed Lake Ontario in open boats and captured Fort Frontenac, a French post near the present city of Kingston in Canada. It was of great importance, as it controlled Lake Ontario. Bradstreet levelled the fort, destroyed several armed vessels, and returned to Oswego.

273. The French abandon Fort Duquesne.—While these operations were going on at the north, an army under General John Forbes was advancing on Fort Duquesne, slowly cutting a road through the woods. A detachment sent forward under Major Grant attempted to surprise the fort, but Aubry (*o-bre'*), the French commander, sallied out and cut it to pieces. When the main body of English approached, the French, seeing no hope of resisting, set fire to the fort and retired down the Ohio. Fort Pitt was at once erected by the English, and the city of Pittsburg now occupies the spot.

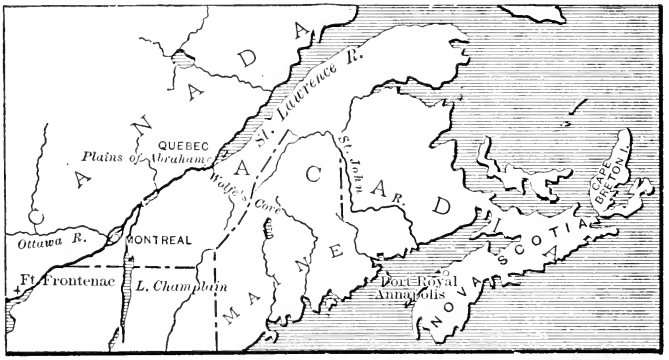
274. Fort Niagara taken.—Canada was now on the verge of ruin. England was sending out troops, but no aid came from France. There was no fort to protect the Canadian trade with the West except at Niagara, and to this an English army under General Prideaux (*pree-dō'*) laid siege in July, 1759. Prideaux was killed early in the siege by the bursting of one of his own shells, and Sir William Johnson took command. Some French troops, aided by bush-rangers and Indians under Aubry, attempted to relieve the fort, but Johnson met them, drove them back, and captured some of their principal officers, and Fort Niagara surrendered.

275. The final expeditions. — England then made her grand attack on Canada. An army of 11,000 men, one-half being regulars, moved from New York against Montreal;

272. What is said of Colonel John Bradstreet?—273. What can you say of the attack on Fort Duquesne? What city now stands on the site of Fort Pitt?—274. What fort did the English besiege in July, 1759? What was the result of the attack? By whom was Prideaux succeeded?

and another army under General James Wolfe was sent with a powerful fleet up the St. Lawrence to attack Quebec.

276. Quebec surrenders.—Wolfe reached Quebec in July, 1759, but Montcalm had so increased the fortifications and was so watchful that for three months the English commander was unable to find a spot where he could make a successful attack. At last he discovered a ravine (since



MAP OF ACADIA, NOVA SCOTIA, AND A SECTION OF CANADA.

called Wolfe's Cove), up which, he thought, his men could climb to the heights above, and he determined to attempt it.

277. To divert the attention of the French, the English fleet prepared as if to attack the city, while Wolfe with his men, under cover of night, dropped down the river in boats. His attempt was successful, and morning found the English army on the Plains of Abraham, less than a mile from Quebec.

278. Montcalm saw his danger, and summoned all his forces to join in a grand attack on the English, but his army, made up partly of militia, could not stand the charge of the British regulars.

275. Who was sent against Montreal? Who commanded the expedition against Quebec?—276–277. In what state did Wolfe find the fortifications when he reached Quebec? How did he determine to reach the heights of Quebec? What was done to avert the attention of the French?—278. What was the result of the battle?

279. Wolfe, leading on his men, was three times wounded, the last time fatally. As he was being carried to the rear he heard that the enemy was flying. "Now God be praised," exclaimed the dying soldier, "I die happy," and so expired. Almost at the same time Montcalm fell mortally wounded. It is said that when he learned he could

DEATH OF WOLFE.

not live he expressed himself as pleased, for then, said he, "I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec." A few days later, on September 18, 1759, Quebec surrendered.

280. Montreal taken by the English.—The defeat of Montcalm virtually ended the war. The French gathered all their strength at Montreal, but when Amherst with a large army advanced on the city it capitulated, and Canada was entirely in the hands of the English.

281. By the treaty of Paris in 1763 France surrendered

279. Describe the death of Wolfe. Of Montcalm. When did Quebec surrender?—280. What followed from the defeat of Montcalm?

to England Canada and that portion of Louisiana between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi, except the island and city of New Orleans, and to Spain, who had aided her against the English, she ceded New Orleans and the part of Louisiana which lay west of the Mississippi.

282. England gets Florida.—By this same treaty, to which Spain and Portugal were also parties, Spain gave Florida to England in exchange for the city of Havana, in the island of Cuba, which the English had taken the year before.

Topics for Review.—Tell what you can about :—

1. Braddock's expedition, his defeat—2. The capture of Fort William Henry—3. The taking of Louisburg—4. The defeat of the English at Ticonderoga—5. The capture of Fort Frontenac—6. The result of the attack on Fort Duquesne—7. Montcalm, his victories and his defeat —8. The fall of Canada—9. The result of the treaty of Paris in 1763.

THE GOVERNMENT OF THE COLONIES.—Up to this time there were three forms of government in the thirteen colonies, viz.:— 1. "**Royal**" government, 2. "**Charter**" government, 3. "**Proprietary**" government.

In the first the king ruled absolutely, through a governor whom he appointed, and approved or disapproved of all laws that were passed. The colonies under a "royal" government were :

Virginia, New York, New Jersey, North Carolina, South Carolina, New Hampshire, Georgia.

In the second form the colonies were governed by the people themselves under a charter from the king granting certain rights and privileges. The "charter" colonies were :

Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island.

In the third form of government the colonies were ruled by the owners or *proprietors* of the land, who had much the same power as the king had in the colonies under "royal" government. The "proprietary" colonies were :

Maryland, Pennsylvania, Delaware.

From time to time there were changes in the form of government of the several colonies, but the above shows the forms existing at the time of the War for Independence.

281. What was the result of the treaty of Paris in 1763?—282. What was done by Spain?

REVIEW II.—THE COLONIES.

VIRGINIA :—

The London Company at Jamestown, 1607—John Smith and his management of the colony—The Starving Time—Arrival of Lord De la Warr—Arrival of Gates—The division of land—Pocahontas—The first step toward liberty in the New World—Indian Massacre, 1622.

MASSACHUSETTS :—

The Puritans—Voyage of the Mayflower, 1620—The Pilgrims of Plymouth—Progress of the colony—The great emigration—Organization of the colony, 1630.

OTHER NEW ENGLAND COLONIES :—

Settlement of Hartford and New Haven—Of Rhode Island—Of Little Harbor and Dover—Of New Hampshire—The United Colonies of New England.

MARYLAND :—

Lord Baltimore in Newfoundland—Charter for Maryland—St. Mary's founded—The first Maryland Assembly, 1635.

NEW NETHERLANDS AND DELAWARE :—

The Dutch West India Company—Settlement on Manhattan Island—Settlement on Lewes Creek, Delaware—The Swedes settle in Delaware—The Dutch take New Sweden

THE INDIANS :—

The various tribes—Their mode of life.

POLITICAL CHANGES :—

The Commonwealth of England—Puritans in Maryland—Religious freedom in Maryland—Intolerance in Massachusetts—The Restoration in England under Charles II.—New Netherlands becomes New York.

NEW JERSEY :—

New Jersey settled by the English—Settlements at Middletown, Shrewsbury, Bergen, and Elizabethtown.

CAROLINA :—

A grant for Carolina—South Carolina begun.

INDIAN TROUBLES :—

King Philip's War—The Narragansetts destroyed—Philip killed—In South Carolina—Among the Abnakis in Maine—With the Chickasaws.

PENNSYLVANIA :—

William Penn's charter—Settlement of Pennsylvania—Philadelphia founded—Penn's treatment of the Indians.

GOVERNMENT OF THE COLONIES :—

Massachusetts becomes a royal province—New York annexed to New England—Andros governor—Connecticut refuses to yield its charter—Leisler governor of New York—Massachusetts Bay and Plymouth united in one colony—Pennsylvania, under a proprietary government, becomes for a time a royal colony—Carolina a royal province.

WAR WITH FRANCE, 1689–1697 :—

Indian massacre at Lachine—Indian attacks in Maine and New York—Phips' unsuccessful attack on Quebec.

QUEEN ANNE'S WAR, 1704–1713 :—

Massacre at Deerfield and Haverhill—Acadia captured by the English—The English make a fruitless attack on Quebec—South Carolina attacks the Spaniards in Florida—French attack on Charleston—Peace, 1713.

LOUISIANA :—

Settlement at Biloxi, Mobile, and, finally, at New Orleans—Posts established at Natchez, on the Arkansas River, and settlements at Kaskaskia and Cahokio—War with the Natchez.

GEORGIA :—

Oglethorpe chooses the present location of Savannah as a site—Builds a fort—At war with Florida—Spaniards defeated at Savannah.

KING GEORGE'S WAR, 1744–1748 :—

Louisburg taken—Louisburg restored to France.

A NEW WAR WITH FRANCE, 1754–1763:—

Washington in the field—Fate of the Acadians—Braddock's defeat—English defeat at Fort Niagara and at Crown Point—Forts at Oswego and Fort William Henry captured by the French—The English capture Forts Frontenac, Duquesne, and Niagara—Montcalm's victories and defeat—Wolfe takes Quebec—Montreal surrenders to the English—Peace concluded.

Part III.—War for Independence.

CHAPTER XV.

The Injustice of England Causes Her to Lose the Good Will of the Colonies.

283. England proposes to tax America.—The close of the war with France found England groaning under an enormous debt, and it was necessary to raise a revenue to pay off the interest. To make the burden lighter for Great Britain, parliament proposed to tax the people of the colonies.

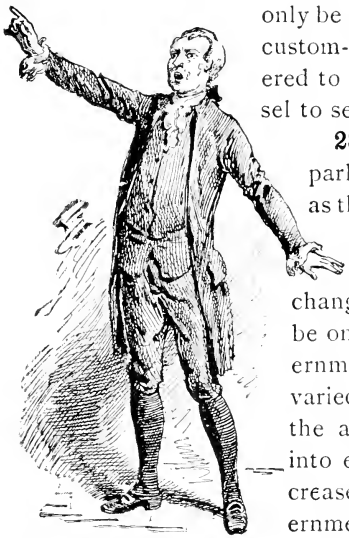
284. Objections of the Americans.—As the colonists had not the right to send members to the British parliament, they denied the right of that body to tax them. They insisted that there should be no taxation without representation. They did not cause the wars with France nor were they benefited by them. During these wars they had raised large amounts of money by the action of their own legislatures, and given the lives of thirty thousand of their people for the benefit of England.

285. Agitation in the colonies.—The people were aroused: the matter was discussed in the assemblies, at town meetings, and in the newspapers, and it was determined not to submit to parliamentary taxation.

286. Parliament persists.—King George III. and parliament would not yield, and, though they must have known it would add to the dissatisfaction in the colonies, they

283. Why did England propose to tax America?—284. What was the principal objection of the Americans to the proposed tax?—285. To what determination did they come?

decided further to increase the revenue by enforcing the hateful "Navigation Acts" (see ¶112), which had been passed in 1660. By these laws the colonies were forbidden to send their tobacco and other products to any country but England, and the officers of English war ships were authorized to seize any vessel violating this law and to confiscate the goods. The laws also provided that tea, wine, and many other foreign articles of commerce could only be imported from England, and custom-house officers were empowered to break open any house or vessel to search for smuggled goods.



PATRICK HENRY PROTESTING AGAINST THE TAX.

287. The Stamp Act.—In 1765 parliament passed a law, known as the Stamp Act, which required every legal document, deeds, wills, notes, bills of exchange, and even newspapers, to be on paper stamped by the government. The price of the stamp varied, according to the value of the article. This act, if carried into effect, would have largely increased the revenue of the government, but the colonies determined to resist it.

288. Virginia protests.—The legislature of Virginia was in session at that time, but in spite of the strong opposition to the Stamp Act felt by the people, the leading men hesitated to take any action in the matter till Patrick Henry, one of the younger members, offered resolutions declaring that the Assembly chosen by the people alone had the power to impose taxes. In the debate that followed Henry boldly said, "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles I.

286. What laws relating to America were passed in England?—287 What was the Stamp Act?

his Cromwell, and George III.——" "Treason! treason!" came the cry from different parts of the house. "And George III.," continued Henry undismayed, "may profit by their example. If that be treason, make the most of it." The bold resolutions were adopted.

289. Massachusetts rejects the Stamp Act, and calls for a Congress.—The action of Virginia affected the whole country. The General Court of Massachusetts declared the Stamp Act illegal, and proposed that representatives from all the colonies should meet at New York in October to adopt plans for concerted action in defence of their liberties.

290. The first Colonial Congress.—Accordingly, the first Colonial Congress met in New York City on October 7, 1765, and was attended by twenty-eight delegates, representing the colonies of Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, Pennsylvania, Maryland, South Carolina, Delaware, New Jersey, and New York. It was the first time that representatives of the colonies came together, and it prepared the people to acknowledge a Congress of delegates as a government. After three weeks' deliberation this Congress drew up a declaration of the rights of the people and a statement of their grievances, which were sent to England with addresses to the king and parliament.

Topics for Review.—

1. Injustice of England—2. The Navigation Acts—3. The Stamp Act—4. The action of the colonies.

288. What resolutions were proposed by Patrick Henry in the Virginia Legislature? What did Patrick Henry say?—289. What action did Massachusetts propose?—290. Where and when did the first Colonial Congress meet? By whom was the Congress attended? What action did it take?

CHAPTER XVI.

GROWING DISSATISFACTION IN AMERICA—THE BOSTON TEA PARTY—PONTIAC'S REBELLION—PREPARING FOR WAR.

291. The colonies refuse to take stamped paper.—Large quantities of stamped paper were sent out from England, and an agent was appointed in every colony to sell it. But the people compelled these agents to resign, and would not permit any of the stamped paper to be used. In New York a mob paraded the streets with banners denouncing the law, and went so far as to take the carriages of the Lieutenant-Governor and burn them before his house.

292. New duties imposed.—It was evident that the Stamp Act could not be put into execution without resort to force. As the government of England hesitated to attempt this, the Stamp Act was repealed at the next meeting of parliament, February 22, 1766. This was due in a great measure to Pitt and Edmund Burke, who took up the cause of the Americans.

293. England would not, however, give up her claim to the right to tax the colonies. In 1767 parliament passed an act to levy duties on all glass, paper, painter's colors, and tea that might be imported into any colony. This revived opposition in America, and when a vessel with a cargo containing these articles reached Annapolis it was not allowed to land, but was sent back to England. At Boston the people acted so boldly that General Gage, who was commander of the British army in America, sent to Halifax for two more regiments.

291. What did the people of America do in regard to the stamped paper?—292. To whose influence was the repeal of the Stamp Act due?—293. What other obnoxious act did parliament pass in 1767? How was it received in America?

294. The Boston Massacre.—The authorities of Boston insisted that the soldiers should be placed in barracks in the fort, but Gage kept them in the city. The result was continual collisions between the citizens and the soldiers. The presence of the latter added to the excitement. The soldiers insulted the people constantly and the street boys annoyed the soldiers. Finally, on March 5, 1770, during a street quarrel a squad of soldiers fired on the people, killing three persons and wounding several others, two mortally. This is called the Boston Massacre.

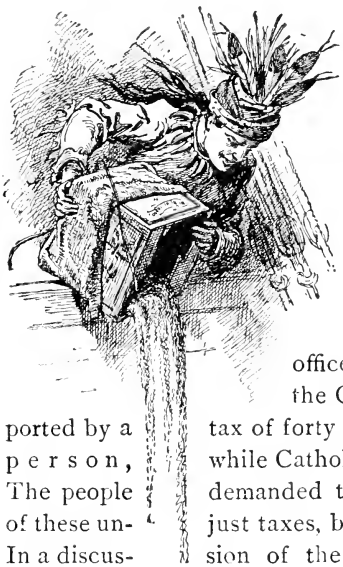
295. Great indignation was caused by this conflict, and accounts of it, some with rude pictures, were spread through the country. Captain Preston and three of his men were arrested and tried for murder, but all were acquitted, except two of the soldiers, who were sentenced to be slightly branded. As an evidence of the respect for law and justice on the part of the people, John Adams and Josiah Quincy, Jr., two of the most popular leaders of the day, appeared for the defence; and it is to the honor of the jury that its verdict was in accordance with the law and the evidence, although contrary to the popular sentiment.

296. The Boston Tea Party.—Parliament repealed the duty on all goods except tea, but this did not satisfy the people. The patriots resolved that no tea should land. In several colonies ships loaded with tea were compelled to return, and where the obnoxious article was landed it was not allowed to be sold.

297. On December 16, 1773, while the British authorities at Boston were disputing with the popular leaders about the landing of some cargoes of tea, a number of men disguised as Indians boarded the tea ships, broke open the chests, and emptied their contents, to the value of about $90,000, into the harbor. This is known as the Boston

294. What occurred in the streets of Boston on March 5, 1770?—295. What was done to Capt. Preston and his men? Who defended Captain Preston at his trial?—296. What did the people of America resolve in regard to tea?

Tea Party. Some weeks later another cargo received similar treatment. The account of the destruction of tea caused great indignation in England, and in punishment of the act parliament closed the port of Boston, so that no vessel could enter its harbor or sail from it.



298. Maryland dissatisfied.—Maryland, too, had complaints to make. The royal officers received enormous fees, the Church of England was supported by a tax of forty pounds of tobacco on every person, while Catholics were not allowed to vote. The people demanded the abolition or a reduction of these unjust taxes, but the British party resisted. In a discussion of the subject Charles Carroll of Carrollton, afterward one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, but then a young lawyer, triumphantly defended the rights of Americans against Daniel Dulaney, the great advocate of the British side.

299. Discontent in Canada.—While the old English colonies were thus dissatisfied, the French in Canada and the western country complained of being governed by English officers. These people wished to be governed by their old laws and customs, and demanded freedom to exercise the Catholic religion. This last had been promised in the surrender of Montreal and in the Treaty of Paris, but was not given.

300. Pontiac's Conspiracy.— The Indians in the West liked the French, but distrusted the English, who treated

297. What is known as the Boston Tea Party? What did parliament do? —298. What led to dissatisfaction in Maryland? What is said of Charles Carroll?—299. Of what did the people of Canada complain, and why?

them with contempt and even with injustice. To destroy the English, Pontiac, a famous chief, united the different tribes from Carolina to the Lakes in a conspiracy. In May, 1763, the Indians rose, and surprised Forts Sandusky, St. Joseph, Miami, Mackinaw, and three forts in Pennsylvania, killing most of the garrison and officers. Detroit and Fort Pitt were attacked, and an English force sent to relieve Detroit was cut to pieces; but Colonel Bouquet (*boo-kay'*), a gallant Swiss officer in the English service, led a force against the Indians and defeated them in a bloody battle at Edgehill and saved Fort Pitt.

301. By the exertions of Canadian officers, who understood how to manage the Indians, Pontiac was induced to make peace. The English government then appointed officers to take charge of Indian affairs, and by giving the savages presents and supplies finally gained their friendship The English afterward took advantage of this, and used the Indians against the Americans.

302. The Quebec Bill.—The controversies between England and the colonies caused the people to lose much of their reverence for the king and respect for parliament. In 1774 what is known as the "Quebec Bill" was passed by parliament, and, though perfectly just, gave great offence to the old colonies, in which Puritan bigotry still existed. This Bill secured to the Canadians their own civil laws, and restored the Catholic clergy to all their old rights. It also included as part of Canada Detroit, Vincennes, Kaskaskia, and other French settlements in the West.

303. The first Continental Congress.—The thought of armed resistance to England now occurred to the colonies for the first time, but before taking action they decided to consult together. Accordingly, a congress was called, and

300. What is known as Pontiac's Conspiracy? What did Pontiac do in May, 1763? Where were the Indians defeated?—301. Who induced Pontiac to make peace?—302. What was the "Quebec Bill"?

on September 5, 1774, delegates from all the colonies, except Georgia, met at Philadelphia. Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, was elected President and Charles Thomson, of Philadelphia, Secretary of this body, which took the name of the Continental Congress. It became in time the real government of the country, negotiating with foreign powers, raising an army, and carrying on war. In this Congress it was maintained that the power to raise money belonged to the legislature of each colony; it protested against standing armies, and resolved that all intercourse with England should stop until she abandoned her claim to tax the people of America.

304. Provincial Congresses begin to raise troops.—Massachusetts, Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia each elected a Provincial Congress to make laws for its people, as the English government had dissolved their Assemblies. The Congress at Massachusetts at once organized the militia, and a certain part, known as "Minute Men," was kept ready, with their arms and ammunition, to meet at a minute's notice.

305. General Gage prepares for a siege.—General Gage, the British commander at Boston, prepared to hold that city until re-enforcements arrived. He seized all the colonial ammunition he could reach, and fortified Boston Neck.

306. Indian war in Virginia.—About this time Virginia was threatened by hostile Indians. Brave men from North Carolina and Virginia had begun to cross the mountains and settle in what became Tennessee and Kentucky. These hardy settlers gathered in defence of their homes, and near the Kanawha River met and after a fierce and bloody battle defeated an Indian force of Shawnees, Delawares, and Senecas under the chief Cornplanter.

303. When and where did the first Continental Congress meet? What did it do?—304. What states elected Provincial Congresses? What was done in Massachusetts?—305. What did General Gage do?—306. What Indian tribes were defeated in Virginia?

307. Dunmore seizes the powder.—Soon after Lord Dunmore, governor of Virginia, seized the powder belonging to the colony, but the indignant people arose, and six hundred resolute men assembled to recover it. However, by the advice of George Washington and Peyton Randolph, who felt it was important that England should make the first attack, the men dispersed without carrying out their design.

Topics for Review. —Tell what you can about :—

1. How the Stamp Act was received by the colonies—2. Why it was repealed—3. The new taxes—4. The collision between the citizens and British troops—5. The Boston Tea Party—6. The dissatisfaction in Maryland and Canada—7. The first Continental Congress—8. Why it was called—9. What it maintained—10. The coming trouble.

CHAPTER XVII.

War Begins—The Second Continental Congress—Bunker Hill—Boston Besieged.

308. Gage sends troops to seize ammunition and stores at Concord.—When General Gage in Boston found that the people of Massachusetts were preparing to resist him, he resolved to seize and destroy their ammunition and military stores. For this purpose, on April 19 1775, a force of 800 British grenadiers and light infantry, under Lieutenant-Colonel Smith, landed at Charlestown and marched on Concord.

309. But the country had been alarmed: Paul Revere, a brave patriot, had ridden out and warned the people, and when Major Pitcairn appeared at the head of an advance-guard and approached Lexington Green, he found a body of Minute Men drawn up and ready to receive him.

310. Lexington the first battle of the Revolution.—Pitcairn cried out: "Disperse, ye villains, ye rebels, disperse!" and

307. What did Lord Dunmore do? By whose advice were the people pacified?—309. What is said of Paul Revere?—310. What was the first battle of the Revolution? Describe the battle of Lexington.

ordered his men to fire. Seven Americans were killed and nine wounded, and the others, being too few to resist so large a force, fired one volley and dispersed. When the remainder of the British troops came up they gave three cheers, and then pushed on to Concord; there they destroyed some flour, spiked two old cannon, and burned the liberty pole.

311. The battle of Concord Bridge.—By this time the militia came pouring in from all the country around. When they reached Concord Bridge they found some British soldiers tearing it up. The soldiers fired across the stream, the fire was returned, and some were killed on both sides. Colonel Smith saw that he had not a minute to lose in retreating to Boston. On his march he was attacked from the roadside, from every bush, hill, and stone wall.

312. Though many of his soldiers were killed and wounded, they kept together until they passed through Lexington. Then they began to run, and were chased like a lot of sheep by the patriots, who kept up an incessant fire. Just on the outskirts of Lexington the soldiers were met by Lord Percy, who had been sent from Boston with 1200 men to rescue Smith and his command. The retreat continued, nor did the British halt until they reached a place where the cannon of the ships of war in the harbor could protect them.

313. The colonies rise.—When the news of the battle of Lexington spread through the country the militia were called out in the other colonies and sent to the help of Massachusetts. John Stark, an old Indian fighter, who had gained experience in war with the French, commanded the New Hampshire men; Israel Putnam, a brave and an experienced soldier, "in his leather frock and apron," says Bancroft, "was assisting hired men to build a stone wall on his farm when he heard the cry from Lexington. Leav-

311. What was the result of the battle of Concord Bridge?—312. What happened as the British retreated through Lexington?

THE RETREAT OF THE BRITISH FROM LEXINGTON.

ing them to continue their task, he set off instantly" at the head of the Connecticut militia; and Captain Cresap, who had gained renown in Indian warfare, brought a hundred and thirty riflemen from Maryland. In a short time a little army of brave men held Gage and the British troops shut up in Boston.

314. Capture of Ticonderoga.—A short time after the battle of Lexington Colonel Ethan Allen with volunteers raised in Vermont, aided by Captain Benedict Arnold with a small party from Connecticut, marched against Fort Ticonderoga, on Lake Champlain. The fort was well supplied with cannon and military stores, but the patriots surprised it, and captured Delaplace, the British commander, and fifty men. It is related that when Delaplace asked by what authority Allen seized the fort the patriot soldier answered: "In the name of the great Jehovah and the Continental Congress."

315. On the coast of Maine Captain Jeremiah O'Brien with a few brave men added another victory to the American cause by the capture of the English vessel "Margaretta" and two sloops. This was the first blow struck on the water after the American Revolution had actually begun.

316. The second Continental Congress.—A few hours after the capture of Ticonderoga, on May 10, 1775, the second Continental Congress met at Philadelphia. It resolved to organize an army of all the colonies as the Continental army, and George Washington, then forty-three years old, was chosen unanimously as the man best fitted to be commander-in-chief and to unite the colonies. He accepted the position, but refused to take any pay except enough to defray his expenses. Major-generals and other officers were commissioned under him to organize the forces.

313. What can you say of John Stark? Of Israel Putnam? Of Captain Cresap?—314. Describe the capture of Ticonderoga. 315. Where and by whom was the first blow struck on the water?—316. When did the second Continental Congress meet at Philadelphia? Who was appointed commander-in-chief? On what terms did he accept the position?

The Battle of Bunker Hill

317. The battle of Bunker Hill.—By this time Gage had received re-enforcements from England under Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne, and in May he resolved to extend his lines out of Boston. The Americans, however, were on the alert, and troops were sent under command of Colonel William Prescott to throw up fortifications on Bunker Hill, which is in Charlestown, overlooking part of Boston.

318. A thousand earnest, ready men assembled by some mistake on Breed's Hill, nearer Boston, and it was midnight before the earth was first broken. But the patriots worked with a will, and when morning dawned, June 17, 1775, a line of earthworks was revealed to the astonished gaze of the citizens and the British officers and sympathizers, who flocked in crowds to look upon the "rebel" fortress.

319. Gage saw that he could not hold Boston unless he broke the American line. Two thousand British soldiers landed at Charlestown, and were soon followed by as many more, to attack the American works. The patriots, protected only by their slight earthworks and a rail fence filled up with hay, calmly awaited the foe.

320. When the English, in two columns, climbing the hill, had almost reached the works, the Americans poured on them such volleys that both columns were driven back with heavy loss. Their officers rallied them, and a second attack was made, but they were again repulsed.

321. The ammunition of the Americans was nearly exhausted when the British columns advanced for a third attack; the patriots fired a last volley, and then retired in good order. The English gained the hill, but theirs was a dear victory, as their loss in killed and wounded was over a thousand.

322. The whole loss of the Americans was one hundred and forty-five killed and missing and three hundred and

317–320. Describe the battle of Bunker Hill.—321. Who were the victors?

four wounded. Among the killed was Dr. Joseph Warren, who, though a major-general, worked as a volunteer. His death was universally lamented.

323. Washington besieges Boston.—Washington reached the camp before Boston in June, 1775, and began to organize the forces into a disciplined army. Early in the spring he advanced to Dorchester Heights, and threw up works which commanded Boston.

324. General William Howe, who had succeeded Gage as commander, agreed to evacuate the city, and on March 17th embarked with his army. He was accompanied by a number of loyalists who preferred to live under English government. The fleet sailed to Halifax, and for a time the country was free from British troops.

Topics for Review.—

1. War precipitated—2. Rising of the colonies—3. The battle of Lexington—4. Capture of Ticonderoga—5. The second Continental Congress—6. Washington commander-in-chief—7. The battle of Bunker Hill—8. The British evacuate Boston.

CHAPTER XVIII.

OPERATIONS AGAINST CANADA—SIEGE OF CHARLESTON—THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE—THE MOVEMENT AGAINST NEW YORK—THE BATTLE OF LONG ISLAND.

325. The Campaign against Canada.—Besides driving the English out of Boston, Congress wished to gain control of Canada. Accordingly, an army under General Philip Schuyler was sent by way of Lake Champlain, and another from New England under General Benedict Arnold by way of the Kennebec River.

326. Schuyler fell sick, and the command devolved on General Richard Montgomery, a gallant Irish officer in

322. What was the loss of the Americans?—324. What was the result of Washington's siege of Boston?

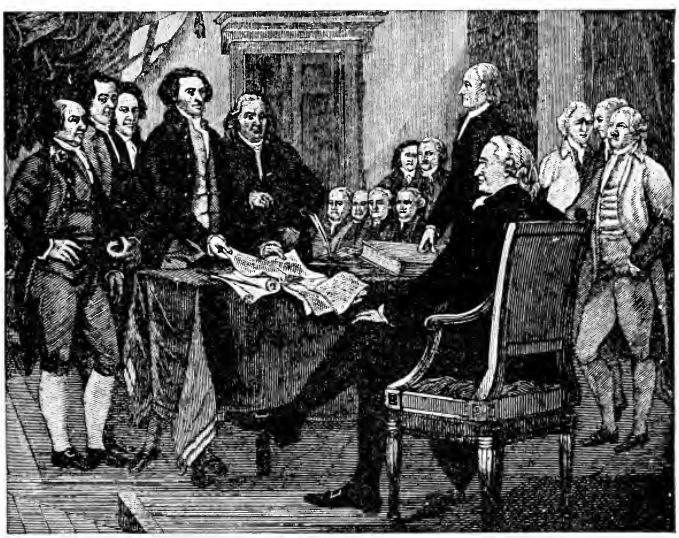
the American service. Montgomery took several British posts and entered Montreal. Then he advanced to Quebec, where he was joined by Arnold, who reached that city after a march of great hardships and suffering through the forests. An attack on the city was planned, and on December 31st four columns moved against the gates. The city was bravely defended, and the Americans were repulsed at all points with heavy loss. General Montgomery was killed and Arnold badly wounded. The troops were drawn off, but the defeat disheartened the Canadians who were ready to join them. Finally disease broke out, and the army retreated from Canada.

327. The British attack Charleston.—In the hope of reducing the colonies to subjection, the British government resolved to use its powerful army and navy. Accordingly, several English regiments were sent over under Lord Cornwallis, and Sir Henry Clinton was appointed commander-in-chief. A fleet commanded by Sir Peter Parker was to aid the operations of the army.

328. New York, however, was occupied by General Charles Lee with a considerable force, and Clinton dared not attack it. He, therefore, sailed south, hoping to capture Charleston. That city was protected by Fort Moultrie, a work built of palmetto logs and filled in with sand. The English fleet attacked this fort, but was repulsed with a loss of two ships and many men, June 28, 1775. During the engagement the American flag was shot away from the fort, but Sergeant William Jasper, a brave Irishman who was fighting for his adopted country, sprang over the wall, and amid the rattling balls of the enemy took up the flag and planted it firmly on the fort.

326. Who succeeded Schuyler as commander? What did he do? What was the result of the attack on Quebec? What was the fate of Montgomery?—327. Who was sent from England about this time?—328. Why was the contemplated attack on New York abandoned? What was the result of the British attack on Charleston? What is said of Sergeant Jasper?

329. The Declaration of Independence.—Up to this time the Americans considered themselves loyal English subjects who were merely fighting for their rights. It became clear, however, that King George III. and the British parliament would use all their power to crush the Americans rather than recognize those rights, and many patriotic men felt satisfied that America must renounce all allegiance to the king and all subjection to parliament.

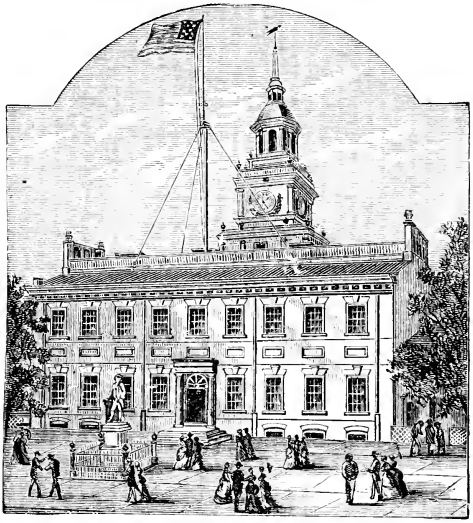


SIGNING OF THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

330. As this feeling spread, the wish for independence grew general, and the Continental Congress appointed a committee to draw up a declaration of independence. This document was written by Thomas Jefferson of Virginia, and is one of the noblest state-papers the world has ever seen. It was passed by Congress on July 4, 1776, and afterward signed by all the members of that body; printed copies were then sent through the country, all the thirteen

329. What had the Americans considered themselves up to this time? Why did the wish for independence grow?

colonies, Delaware, Connecticut, New Hampshire, Pennsylvania, Massachusetts, Virginia, New Jersey, Maryland, New York, Georgia, South Carolina, North Carolina, Rhode Island accepted it, and the rule of George III. was at an end. The colonies became the United States, each under control of its own legislature, and the whole subject to the Continental Congress.



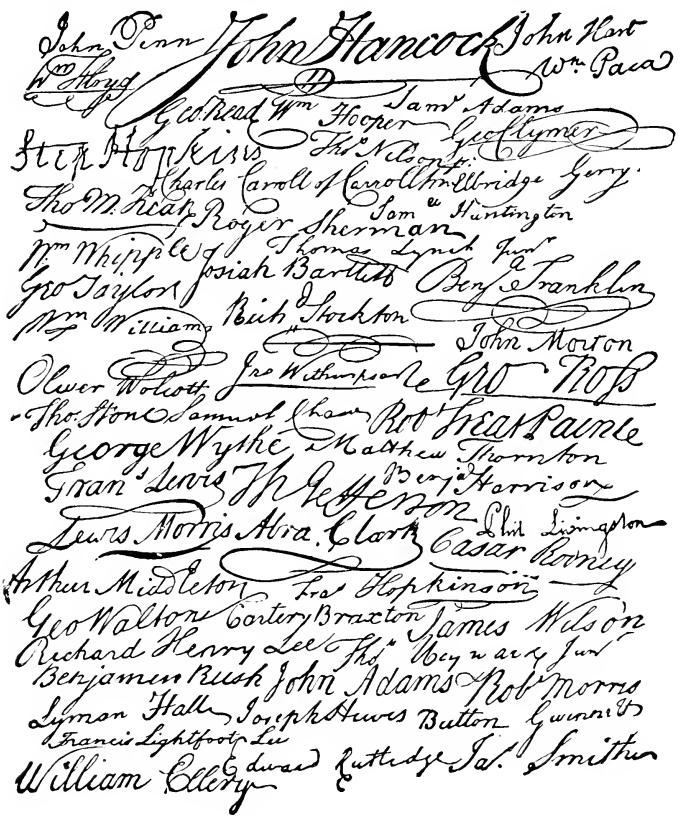
INDEPENDENCE HALL, PHILADELPHIA.

333. Several interesting anecdotes are told in connection with the signing of the Declaration of Independence. It is said that when John Hancock signed his name (see opposite page), he added: "There, John Bull can read that without spectacles." "Well, gentlemen," remarked Franklin, "we must all hang together now, or we are likely to hang separately." "Your hand trembles," said a bystander to Stephen Hopkins, whose signature is written in broken lines. "True," answered the patriot, "but my heart does not." When Charles Carroll, who was a rich

CHARLES CARROLL.

330. Who wrote the Declaration of Independence? When was it passed?

man, signed a member exclaimed, "There go millions. But there are many Carrolls," he continued, "and King George will not know which one it is." Whereupon Car-



roll added "of Carrollton" to his signature, with the remark that there could be no mistake about that.

332. A new state of affairs.—As soon as the country was declared free and independent, the royal arms were every-

331. Tell some of the anecdotes related in connection with the signing of the Declaration of Independence.

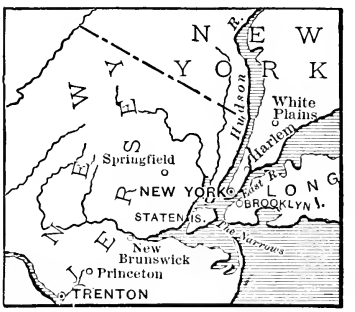
where pulled down; no more prayers for the king were offered in the churches; and all legal documents were issued in the name of the people of the State. A gilded leaden statue of King George, which stood in the Bowling Green, New York, was pulled down and melted into bullets. Of course, there were some citizens in every State who still adhered to the king: these were called *Tories* or *Loyalists*, while the patriots who acknowledged Congress were known as *Whigs*.

333. The English movement against New York.—The British now planned an attack on New York. Two days before the signing of the Declaration of Independence General William Howe, from Halifax, with his army lately driven from Boston, landed on Staten Island; on the 12th of July Admiral Lord Richard Howe, a brother of the general, who had been despatched from England with a powerful fleet and a large body of men, also arrived at Staten Island, and on August 1st General Clinton joined them with the force that had taken part in the attack on Charleston. The army under General Howe was thus swelled to about 35,000 men, well armed and supplied, and many of them veteran soldiers. Part of his force was made up of about 8,600 men hired in Germany, known as Hessians. Washington, whose headquarters were in New York, had not more than 17,000 men under his command, which spread over a large district, and many were raw militia.

334. The battle of Long Island.—The channel leading to New York City runs between Staten Island and Long Island. On one side of New York is the Hudson and on the other side the East River, and as Washington had no ships it was difficult to defend the city. Fearing Howe would cross to Long Island Washington sent part of his

332. What followed the Declaration of Independence? What were the loyalists called? What the patriots?—333. What attack did the British plan? For this purpose, what was done? What can you say of the British army? What of the American?

army to Brooklyn. Toward the end of August Howe landed on Long Island, and on the 27th of that month the battle of Long Island was fought, and resulted in a disastrous defeat for the Americans. The British neglected to follow up their advantage at once, and on the night of the 29th, under cover of a dense fog, Washington, outwitting Howe, succeeded in transferring his whole army, with the stores and artillery, except a few heavy pieces, across the East River to New York.



335. Washington retreats to Harlem.—Seeing that he could not hold New York City against the great force of the enemy, Washington retreated up the island toward Harlem. Howe, with a fleet in the East River and the Hudson, occupied the city, which on the morning of September 21st was nearly destroyed by fire.

336. Nathan Hale.—As it was important that Washington should receive information about the enemy's plans, Captain Nathan Hale, a young man only twenty-one years old, offered to enter the British lines and learn what he could. Hale had been a student at Yale College, and was teaching school when the news of Lexington reached him. Flinging aside his books, he enlisted in the patriot army, and soon rose to the rank of captain. Hale reached the British camp, made drawings of the works, with notes in Latin, and was on his way back when he was captured. He was treated most barbarously. He was not permitted to see a clergyman, and his letters to his mother and sister were torn to pieces before his face. He was tried at once

334. Describe the battle of Long Island.—335. Where did Washington go? What did Washington succeed in doing? What did Howe do?

and hanged. His last words were: "I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country."

337. After losing precious time, Howe pursued Washington, but was checked in a brisk action at Harlem Plains. Washington continued his retreat to White Plains, where Howe again came up, but after a sharp battle returned to New York.

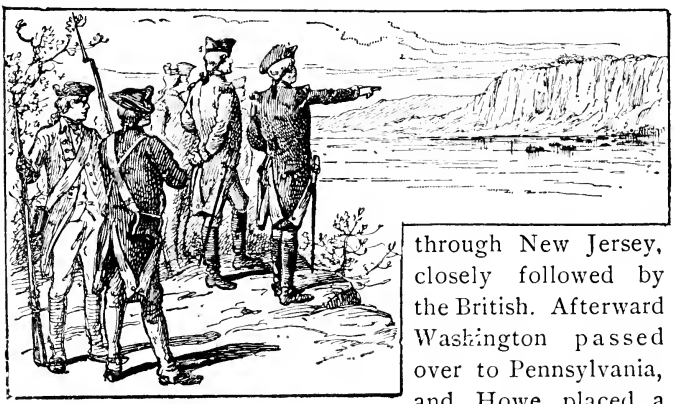
Topics for Review :—

The campaign against Canada—The Declaration of Independence—The battle of Long Island.

CHAPTER XIX.

THE CAMPAIGN IN NEW JERSEY—AID FROM FRANCE—THE BRITISH IN PENNSYLVANIA—BURGOYNE'S INVASION—SURRENDER OF BURGOYNE.

338. Surprise of the Hessians at Trenton.—The American army then crossed the Hudson River, and retreated



WASHINGTON AND HIS STAFF WATCHING THE AMERICAN ARMY CROSSING THE HUDSON.

through New Jersey, closely followed by the British. Afterward Washington passed over to Pennsylvania, and Howe placed a strong force of Hessians at Trenton, with another body of troops under Cornwallis at Princeton.

336. Who was Nathan Hale? What was his fate? 337. What took place at Harlem Plains? At White Plains?—338. What movement was made by Generals Washington and Howe?

339. The American army was rapidly decreasing. The time for which many of the regulars had enlisted was fast passing away, and the militia was not to be depended on. Washington saw that some decisive action must be taken. Through a blinding storm he led his army across the Delaware, made almost impassable by the masses of floating ice, and on the morning of December 26th suddenly fell on the Hessians at Trenton in the midst of their Christmas revelry. Their general, Rahl, was killed and

WASHINGTON CROSSING THE DELAWARE.

nearly a thousand of his men were slain or captured. All their arms and stores fell into Washington's hands. The American loss was two killed, one frozen to death, and six wounded.

340. The battle of Princeton.—On January 2, 1777, Cornwallis with 8,000 men appeared before Washington's intrenchments at Trenton. The American army was not strong enough to risk a battle. Washington, therefore, resorted to stratagem; he left the fires burning in his camp

339. What happened on Christmas night, 1776?

at night and, under cover of the darkness, marched rapidly north. In a short and decisive action he defeated a British force at Princeton and put it to flight, securing many prisoners. The brave American general Mercer was killed in this battle.

LAFAYETTE.

341. Cornwallis, hearing the sound of cannon in his rear, hastened back to save his posts, but Washington drew off safely to the high grounds at Morristown. From this strong position he co-operated with the New Jersey militia in dislodging the British, and before the end of winter Cornwallis held no posts in New Jersey except New Brunswick and Amboy.

342. Aid from France.—Congress made several efforts to induce the King of France to aid the patriot cause, and after a time some assistance was given secretly in money, arms, and supplies. In time, too, the bravery and patriotism of the Americans gained them many friends in Europe, and able officers, like the Marquis de Lafayette, (*laf-fay-yet'*), Steuben (*stu'ben*), De-Kalb, Kosciusko (*kos-see-us'-ko*), and Pulaski (*pu-las'kee*) offered their services to Congress. Lafayette came over in a vessel fitted out at his own expense with supplies for the army.

STEUBEN.

340. To what stratagem did Washington resort at Princeton? What was the result?—341. What did Cornwallis do?—342. What aid was received from France? What four European officers came to help the Americans?

343. The English attack Danbury.—Howe tried more than once to draw Washington into a general engagement, but failing in this sent an expedition to destroy valuable stores at Danbury, Connecticut. The British burned the town, but in their retreat were attacked by Arnold and General David Wooster, who killed many of the party and took others prisoners. Unfortunately General Wooster was mortally wounded in this engagement.

KOSCIUSKO.

344. Howe's expedition against Philadelphia.—Leaving a strong force at Rhode Island and at New York, Howe with a fleet carrying more than eighteen thousand soldiers proceeded to attack Philadelphia. On the 30th of July, 1777, the fleet appeared off the Capes of Delaware, but the river was so well protected that the British commander did not dare to sail up, and continued southward to Chesapeake Bay, and on August 25th landed his troops at Elk Ferry.

345. The battle of Brandywine.—When Washington discovered Howe's object he marched south through Philadelphia and drew up his army on the Brandywine. Here Howe with his Hessians attacked the American army on September 11, 1777, and in the engagement that followed the Americans were defeated with a loss of about twelve hundred men. In this action Lafayette and Pulaski showed great gallantry, and the latter was made a brigadier-general for his bravery. Washington retreated, and Howe advanced on Philadelphia and entered the city on the 26th of September.

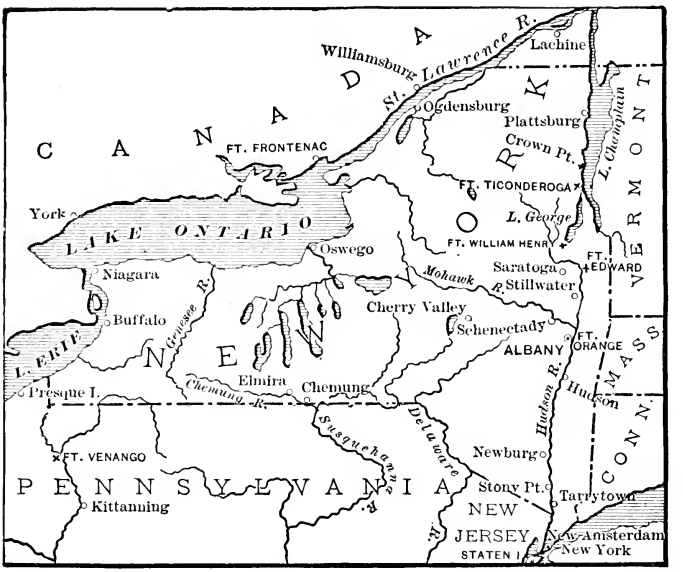
343. What is said of the attack on Danbury?—344. What movement did Howe make against Philadelphia?—345. What can you say of the battle of Brandywine? Who distinguished themselves in this action?

346. The battle of Germantown.—Howe encamped a detachment of his army at the village of Germantown, six miles from Philadelphia. On this body Washington made an unexpected attack October 4th; but after a severe engagement, in which he lost nearly a thousand men, he was forced to retire.

347. The forts on the Delaware.—Howe found that his position was not secure until he opened the Delaware by capturing the two American forts at Red Bank and Mud Island. The British attack on Red Bank, however, was repulsed with great loss, Count Donop, the commander, being wounded and taken prisoner. Mud Island sustained a heavy fire from the English ships and troops until every cannon in the fort was covered with blood. Then Thayer, its brave commander, seeing that further resistance was useless, retreated safely with his garrison. The British fleet then controlled the river.

348. Burgoyne's expedition from Canada.—In the spring of 1777 large bodies of English and Hessian troops were sent out from England to Canada for the purpose of invading New York State by way of Lake Champlain. Burgoyne advanced at the head of this army, which, swelled by numbers of Indians, reached about ten thousand. Fort Ticonderoga, with valuable stores and artillery, was abandoned by the Americans, and the garrison retreated to Fort Edward. Here the American general Schuyler had a body of men, but not enough to meet Burgoyne's force, though Washington had sent him all the troops he could spare. Schuyler accordingly retreated. A detachment of British, Indians, and Tories from Canada entered the Mohawk Valley, but after engaging the Americans under Generals Herkimer and Gansevoort was forced to retreat to Canada.

346. What do you know of the battle of Germantown?—347. What two forts were taken by the British?—348. What was the object of Burgoyne's expedition from Canada? Who composed his troops? What forts were taken by him?



MAP OF NEW YORK.

349. The battle of Bennington.—In August Burgoyne sent Colonel Baum with a party of troops to capture some supplies at Bennington, Vermont, but Colonel John Stark with a body of Vermont and New Hampshire militia met the enemy; Baum was killed with many of his men, and the rest were made prisoners. A fresh body of British, who came up under command of Colonel Breyman to support Baum, was also attacked and routed. It was in this battle that Stark is reported to have said: "There are the red-coats. We must beat them to-day, or before night Molly Stark's a widow."

350. The battle of Stillwater.—A few days after the battle of Bennington Congress superseded General Schuyler by General Horatio Gates, who was born in England,

349. Who was victorious in the battle of Bennington? What did Stark say?

but had settled in Virginia and at the beginning of the war espoused the cause of his adopted country. Gates advanced and took up a strong position at Stillwater. There Burgoyne attacked him on September 19, but, after a hard-fought battle, failed to dislodge him. On October 7th Burgoyne moved from his camp with a considerable force to renew the battle, but the Americans met him and in a furious attack drove him back. Then, under the lead of Arnold, a detachment of the Americans stormed Burgoyne's camp and captured a Hessian regiment.

351. Burgoyne's surrender.—In the night Burgoyne, who had lost his best generals, abandoned his sick and wounded and began a retreat to Canada. Gates followed him closely, and at Saratoga Burgoyne found himself surrounded and in such straits that he could only do one of two things: surrender, or cut his way out, retreat being impossible. Under these circumstances he capitulated, October 17th; the remnant of his army, about six thousand men, with cannon and arms fell into the hands of the Americans.

352. Effects of Burgoyne's surrender.—This was an important victory for the Americans: by it all fear of invasion from Canada was dispelled; the drooping hopes of the patriots revived; and the weakened ranks of the army were strengthened by new recruits.

353. Washington at Valley Forge.—After offering battle to Howe, Washington encamped for the winter at Valley Forge with his destitute army. Mrs. Washington arrived at the camp in February, 1778, and took up her residence in the stone house which was the General's headquarters. By her presence and care she did much to cheer and help the men. They suffered terribly, however, in their wretched

350. By whom was Schuyler superseded as commander? What do you know of General Horatio Gates? Describe the battle of Stillwater What is said of Arnold?—351. Describe Burgoyne's attempt at retreat and his surrender.—352. What was the effect of his surrender?

huts; food was scarce; they were miserably clothed, many were barefoot, and they were unpaid. To make matters worse, a plot was formed in Congress to remove Washington from command; his advice was disregarded, and when he urged that an attack should be made on New York by the victorious army under Gates Congress would not consent.

Topics for Review:—

The capture of the Hessians at Trenton—The battle of Princeton—Burgoyne's expedition and his defeat—The Americans at Valley Forge.

CHAPTER XX.

ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION—AN ALLIANCE WITH FRANCE—INDIAN MASSACRES—THE WAR IN THE SOUTH.

354. Articles of Confederation.—As the war progressed it became evident that a general plan of government for the States must be adopted, and Articles of Confederation were drawn up by order of Congress and submitted to the thirteen States on November 15, 1777. These articles were to form the Constitution of the United States, in case they were approved by the States. They were finally adopted, but all the States were slow in accepting them, and it was not until 1781 that the government was organized under the Articles of Confederation.

355. France recognizes the United States and makes a treaty.—Congress had long urged the French government to recognize the United States as an independent nation, and at last, mainly through the efforts of Benjamin Franklin, who was acting as an Envoy at the court of France, a treaty was made, on the 6th of February, 1778, by which France not only acknowledged the independence of the

353. What was the situation of the Americans at Valley Forge? How did Congress act?—354. What important plan of government was submitted to the States in November, 1777?

United States, but openly took up its cause. Thereupon England declared war against France.

356. Franklin.—Benjamin Franklin was the son of a soap and candle maker, and was born in Boston, January 17, 1706. As a boy he learned the printer's trade, and at the age of seventeen he left home and went to Philadelphia. There he worked first as a journeyman, but afterward became owner of a printing-office. He published "Poor Richard's Almanac," which abounds in wise proverbs, and subsequently became editor and proprietor of the *Pennsylvania Gazette*, one of the foremost papers of the State. He gained distinction as a writer of simple, graceful, classic English. By industry and frugality he made a fortune in business, and then retired to give himself up to science. To him we owe the invention of the lightning-rod, and he it was who discovered that lightning and electricity are the same. Toward the close of the year 1776, after the signing of the Declaration of Independence, Franklin was sent as United States ambassador to France. He was received with the greatest enthusiasm in France: the people admired him for his patriotism; the learned recognized him for his literary and scientific ability; and the court received him for his polished manner. His portrait appeared in the shops, with the following inscription written by Turgot (*tour'go*), the Minister of Finance: "*Eripuit cœlo fulmen, sceptrumque tyrannis:*" "He snatched the thunderbolt from heaven, and the sceptre from tyrants." Franklin returned to Philadelphia in 1785, and remained there until his death, April 17, 1790.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

355. What can you say about the treaty with France? To whose efforts was it mainly due?—356. Tell what you know of Benjamin Franklin.

357. Spain declares war against England.—Following the example of France, Spain declared war against England, but formed no alliance with the United States. However, expeditions from Louisiana were sent against the English in Florida, and the American cause was helped in this way.

358. Effect of the French alliance.—As Congress had no fleet and only a few ships and privateers,* the British could convey troops by their fleets to any part of the coast without opposition. But as soon as war was declared France sent out a fleet under Count d'Estaing (*dĕs'tăn*). This fleet entered Delaware Bay, and as Philadelphia was no longer safe, Clinton, the English general, on June 18, 1778, retreated across New Jersey in the hope of reaching New York, there to join the British fleet.

359. The battle of Monmouth.—Washington immediately left Valley Forge and overtook Clinton at Monmouth, New Jersey. Here an action took place June 28th, and but for the misconduct of General Charles Lee the Americans would have won a complete victory. As it was, Clinton managed to escape to the British fleet at Sandy Hook, but in his march through New Jersey lost more than four hundred in killed and wounded, and eight hundred by desertion.

360. An attempt to recover Newport.—From December, 1777, Newport, Rhode Island, had been occupied by a large British force, and men-of-war were constantly stationed there. By order of Washington General Sullivan was sent with an army to attack the English on land, while the French fleet under Count d'Estaing engaged the English vessels and batteries. Operations began in August, but an English fleet under Howe appeared, and a naval battle followed. A violent storm arose, however, which

* A *privateer* is an armed vessel belonging to one or more private individuals, and licensed by the government to make war on the commerce of its enemy.

357. How did Spain assist the Americans?—358. Who was sent over from France? When did the British evacuate Philadelphia?—359. What took place at Monmouth?

scattered both fleets, and d'Estaing sailed to Boston for repairs. Sullivan, thus left without help, was forced to retreat, after a sharp action with Bigott.

361. Cruel ravages of the British and the Indians.—No longer able to operate with large armies, the British commanders sent out small bodies of men to ravage the country. New Haven in Connecticut, New Bedford and Martha's Vineyard in Massachusetts, and Egg Harbor, New Jersey, suffered from these attacks.

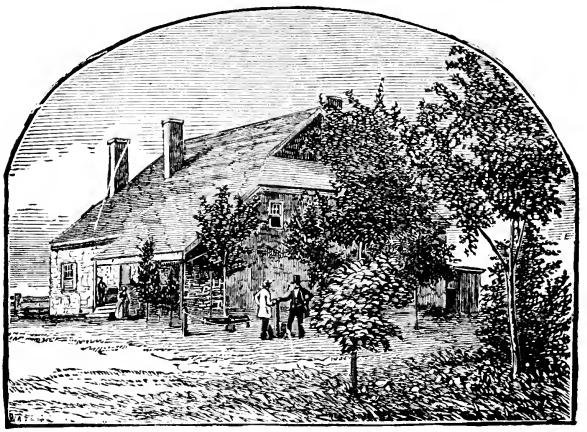
362. In July, 1778, a band of Iroquois and Tories under command of Colonel John Butler, a brutal officer, fell on Wyoming, a beautiful settlement in the Susquehanna Valley, Pennsylvania, butchered men, women, and children, burned the houses and crops, and in a day's time reduced the place to a scene of desolation. A similar barbarous deed was enacted at Cherry Valley, New York, in the November following.

363. Expeditions against the Indians.—To put an end to the Indian depredations from the West an expedition was sent out from Virginia under Colonel George Rogers Clarke, which captured all the British posts except Detroit, and built a fort on the Ohio, where Louisville now stands, in order to overawe the Indians. In May, 1779, General Sullivan marched against the Six Nations in New York, destroying their villages and ravaging their fields.

364. The battle of Stony Point.—By a sudden movement up the Hudson River, Clinton captured the American posts that commanded the river, and fortified a strong position at Stony Point. As it was an important place, Washington determined to recapture it, and confided the undertaking to General Anthony Wayne. Marching over the mountains, Wayne reached the fort, and July 15, 1779, at dead

360. What operation was undertaken by Sullivan and D'Estaing? How did it succeed?—361. Describe the cruel ravages of the British and Indians.—362. What happened in July, 1778? In November?—363. How were these depredations stopped? What did General Sullivan do in May, 1779?

of night, at the head of his men, he climbed to the rocky height above and carried the place at the point of the



WASHINGTON'S HEADQUARTERS AT NEWBURGH.

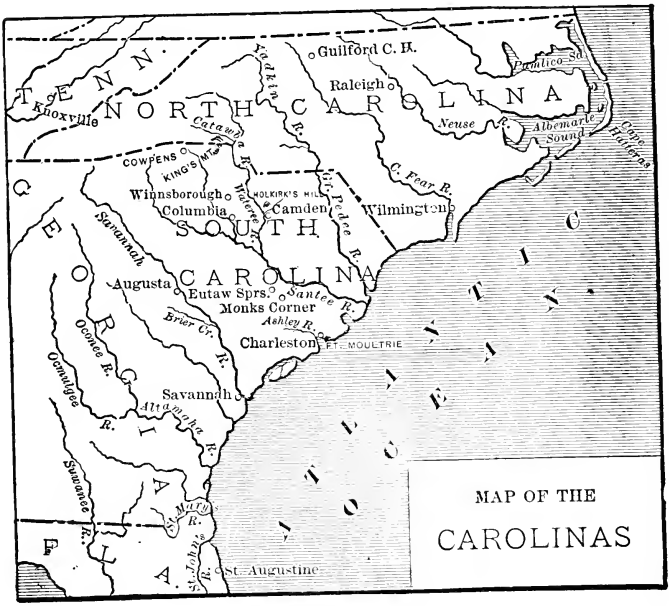
bayonet, capturing the whole garrison. This was one of the most brilliant victories of the war.

365. The English campaign in the South.—Failing to subdue any northern State, the British resolved to transfer the war to the South. Late in December, 1778, a fleet landed a large army in Georgia, the Americans were routed, many Tories took up arms to assist the invaders, and in a short time the State was in the hands of the British.

366. Invasion of South Carolina.—Alarmed at the progress of the enemy, South Carolina called out her militia, and General Lincoln, who commanded in that State, prepared for a defence. A force under General Ashe was sent to drive the British from Augusta, but it was surprised at Brier Creek, March 3, 1779, and completely routed. Prevost, the English commander, then marched rapidly on Charleston, but Lincoln came up in time to make him

364. What place was fortified by Gen. Clinton? How was it captured?—365. To what part of the country did the British now transfer the war? How was Georgia captured?

retire to the islands. Then the British ravaged and plundered the richest parts of the State.



367. The French and American attack on Savannah.—The success of the British in the South made it important to strike a blow to revive the hopes of the patriots, and for this purpose an expedition was planned against Savannah, October, 1779. Assisted by the French fleet of D'Estaing and a considerable force, General Lincoln with an army laid siege to the city, but was repulsed with heavy loss. In the attack the brave Polish nobleman, Count Pulaski, fell mortally wounded, and many other brave men were killed: among them the gallant Sergeant Jasper (see ¶328).

366. What took place in South Carolina? What was the result of the attack on Charleston?—367. What cities did the Americans try to retake, October, 1779? Who were killed then?

368. Naval operations.—The American navy, though small, did excellent service. The cruisers and privateers in the space of three years captured over five hundred British vessels.

PULASKI.

369. John Paul Jones.—In September, 1779, John Paul Jones, a Scotch naval officer who was fighting in the cause of American freedom, captured two British frigates off the English coast. Jones's flagship, the "Bonhomme Richard," was so riddled in this engagement that she sank shortly after her wounded and the rest of the crew had been transferred to one of the prizes.

370. Captains Barry, Biddle, Hinman, Manly, McNeil, and others, also distinguished themselves on the sea. Captain John Barry, an Irish Catholic, afterward head of the American navy, with his cruiser, the "Lexington," captured a British armed tender off the capes of the Delaware. Afterward he destroyed five British vessels below Philadelphia, without losing a man.

Topics for Review:—

The Articles of Confederation—A Treaty with France—Spain and England at war—Aid from France—The campaign in the South—Naval operations.

CHAPTER XXI.

THE LOSS OF CHARLESTON—BRITISH OUTRAGES—DEFEAT OF GATES—MORE HELP FROM FRANCE—ARNOLD'S TREASON—REVOLT OF THE ARMY—GREENE IN THE SOUTH.

371. The loss of Charleston.—After the defeat at Savannah General Lincoln withdrew to Charleston. Here he

368. What is said of the American navy?—369. What did Paul Jones do in September, 1779?—370. What other captains distinguished themselves? What is said of John Barry?

was besieged in April, 1780, by Clinton with an army and a fleet. A force at Monk's Corner, which defended Lincoln's communications with the interior of the State, was surprised and routed, and on the 12th of May, finding there was no hope of relief, Lincoln surrendered with his army, and the whole of South Carolina was in the hands of the enemy. All who did not acknowledge the king were threatened with confiscation, and the English ravaged the State in all directions.

372. Massacre at Waxhaw.—A small party of South Carolina troops was overtaken at Waxhaw by a British force under Colonel Tarleton of the British regulars. Many of the men fled, the rest laid down their arms and asked for quarter, but with a brutality that disgraced his uniform Tarleton butchered them in cold blood.

373. Marion and Sumter.—South Carolina, Georgia, and Florida were now in possession of the British, and with the exception of detached bands of Americans there was no army to oppose them. Such patriots as General Francis Marion (*măr'ee-on*) and General Thomas Sumter with small bodies of devoted followers succeeded in keeping up the war, and gained many signal victories.

374. The battle of Camden.—In the hope of recovering the South Congress in 1780 raised a new army, which it placed under General Gates, who had gained a great reputation by the capture of Burgoyne. Re-enforced by some raw, undisciplined militia, Gates marched on Camden, South Carolina. There Cornwallis had gathered all his forces; he made a furious attack on the Americans at the point of the bayonet; the militia broke and fled, accompanied by Gates. The brave General DeKalb with the Continental troops maintained the battle, until he fell mortally wounded. The loss of the Americans in

371. Describe the siege and loss of Charleston.—372. What outrages were committed by the British at Waxham?—373. What patriot officers succeeded in keeping up the war?

killed and wounded was nearly two thousand, and all their baggage and artillery fell into the hands of the British.

375. The battle of King's Mountain.—Cornwallis followed this victory by acts of great cruelty: he hanged many citizens and burned houses and barns. Believing South Carolina was subdued, he moved toward Virginia, but on October 7th Ferguson's corps of Tories, which formed part of his army, was attacked at King's Mountain, North Carolina, by a body of determined patriots from both sides of the Alleghanies. Ferguson was killed, nearly five hundred of his men were killed and wounded, and all the rest were captured. Alarmed at this defeat, Cornwallis retreated to Winnsborough, South Carolina, continually harassed by small bodies of Americans.

376. Arrival of Rochambeau's army.—On July 10, 1780, a French fleet under Admiral de Ternay (*tare-nay'*) arrived at Newport harbor, bringing a French army of six thousand men under Count de Rochambeau (*ro-sham-bo'*), and Washington proceeded to Connecticut to arrange a plan of campaign with the French commander.

377. Arnold's treason.—General Benedict Arnold had distinguished himself by gallant service at Ticonderoga, Quebec, and Saratoga, but in 1778, when in command at Philadelphia, he was accused of appropriating public moneys. For this he was court-martialled, and, though Washington was as tender as possible of his feelings, Arnold never forgave those connected with his trial. Besides, his extravagant habits had led him deeply in debt. In 1780 Washington placed him in command of West Point, the most important fortress on the Hudson River. This was his opportunity for revenge and for gain, and entering into correspondence with Sir Henry Clinton, he

374. What did Congress do in 1780? Tell what you know of the battle of Camden. Who was mortally wounded there? What was the loss of the Americans?—375. Describe the battle of King's Mountain —376. What aid came from France?

agreed to deliver up the fortress in return for a reward of ten thousand pounds sterling (about $50,000) and a general's commission. To arrange the plans, Clinton sent his aide-de-camp, Major André (*an'dray*), a brilliant and accomplished young officer, up the river in the sloop-of-war "Vulture;" he met Arnold just below Haverstraw and received the plans of the fort.

THE CAPTURE OF ANDRÉ.

378. The capture of André.— When André prepared to return he found that an American battery on shore had compelled the "Vulture" to drop down the stream; so disguising himself, he crossed the river, hoping to reach New York by land. Near Tarrytown, when he believed himself safe inside British lines, he was stopped by three militiamen, John Paulding, Isaac Van Wart, and David Williams. As his conduct was suspicious, they searched him, and found Arnold's plans concealed in his stockings, and refusing all his offers of money for his release, they led

377. Where had Arnold distinguished himself? Why was he court-martialled in 1778? What did he do in 1780 to revenge himself? Who was sent by Clinton to arrange the plans?

him to the nearest American post. Hearing of André's capture, Arnold fled; he received the promised reward, but was looked upon with contempt even by those who bribed him, and self-respecting Englishmen refused to associate with him. André was tried by a court-martial as a spy and hanged, according to the usage of war, October 2, 1780, though every one, including Washington and the officers who presided at his court-martial, deplored his fate. Each of his captors was rewarded by Congress with a medal and a pension for life.

379. Arnold in Virginia.—The following year Arnold appeared in Virginia at the head of a body of British troops. He occupied Portsmouth and advanced to Richmond, where he succeeded in burning part of the city. A vigorous attempt was made to capture him, but an English fleet drove off the French ships sent against Portsmouth and relieved Arnold.

380. Revolt in the American army.—Congress found it very difficult to obtain money from the States for the expenses of the war the paper money called Continental Currency continually decreased in value, and the army suffered. The soldiers received little pay, scanty clothing, and poor rations. Things became so bad that in the winter of 1780–81 the Pennsylvania troops at Morristown revolted and marched out with their arms, intending to go to Philadelphia, there to exact justice from Congress. On their march they met two agents of the British general Clinton, who tried to induce them to join the English. This brought them to their senses: they seized the men and gave them up to General Wayne. At Princeton a committee of Congress promised them redress; so they marched back to camp.

378. Describe the capture of André. What was found in his stockings? What is said of Arnold? By what court was André tried? What was his fate?—379. How did Arnold revenge himself in 1781?—380. What led to revolt in the American army? What induced the troops to return to camp?

381. Congress endeavors to restore confidence.—Alarmed at the general discontent, Congress appointed Robert Morris, a wealthy Philadelphia merchant and a man of great business ability, financial agent of the government. He at once took measures to restore the public credit: loans were negotiated in Europe, and such aid was obtained that Congress was enabled to continue the war.

382. General Greene in the South.—The defeat of General Gates at Camden left the Carolinas and Georgia at the mercy of the British. By the advice of Washington General Nathaniel Greene, an able officer and a man of undoubted courage and perseverance, was sent South to collect an army. He was assisted by General Steuben, who had great ability in disciplining men; and they were joined by Colonel Henry Lee, known as "Light Horse Harry," with his legion, and General Daniel Morgan with his men.

CONTINENTAL CURRENCY.

383. The battle of the Cowpens.—Morgan was sent across the Broad River to hold the British in check, and Cornwallis despatched Tarleton to cut him off. The American force fell back to the Cowpens, South Carolina, and there

381. How was confidence restored?—382. What American general was sent South to collect an army? Who assisted him? Who joined them?

was attacked by Tarleton. For a while the fight waged fast and furious, but in the end the Americans were victorious. Tarleton fled after losing more than six hundred men, his cannon, and baggage. This victory gave the Americans fresh courage, and Congress struck a medal to commemorate Morgan's victory.

384. The pursuit of Morgan.—Morgan then pushed on to join Greene, but was hotly pursued by Cornwallis. Providence protected the Americans, however, for Morgan had scarcely crossed the Catawba River when Cornwallis came up, only to find that the heavy rains had made the river impassable. Morgan reached Greene's army at the Yadkin, and here again Cornwallis arrived only in time to find that his foe had crossed the river and secured the boats.

385. Cornwallis in North Carolina.—The English general then moved toward Virginia, but, being closely watched by Greene, fell back, and began to ravage the country. Greene's force was too small to risk a battle, but he hung close on Cornwallis, constantly moving, and checking every British detachment that was sent out. He at last received a re-enforcement of Virginia and North Carolina militia, and took post at Guilford (*gil'ford*) Court House, North Carolina. Here Cornwallis attacked him. An indecisive battle was fought on March 15, 1781, in which both sides suffered severely, and Cornwallis retreated to Wilmington.

386. Hobkirk's Hill and Eutaw Springs.—Greene then struck into South Carolina, where he successfully engaged the British force under Lord Rawdon at Hobkirk's Hill. Marion, Sumter, and Lee, with their troopers, took post after post from the English, and the courage of the people revived. When the heat of summer had passed Greene marched down the Santee, and on September 8, 1781, met

383. Describe the battle of the Cowpens.—384. Describe the pursuit of Morgan.—385-6. Describe the battles of Guilford Court House, Hobkirk's Hill, and Eutaw Springs.

the British under Colonel Stuart at Eutaw (*u' taw*) Springs. After a well-contested battle in which the loss was heavy, Greene withdrew, carrying off five hundred British prisoners.

337. South Carolina and Georgia freed from the British.—After the battle of Eutaw Springs the British were so harassed by small bodies of Americans that they were driven from all the posts they held, and by the beginning of 1782 only Charleston and Savannah were in their possession. Greene besieged Charleston and Savannah was closely watched by Wayne. Thus, with a small and poorly-equipped army, and without gaining any very important victory, Greene had almost completely recovered the Carolinas and Georgia.

388. Cornwallis in Virginia.—After his retreat to Wilmington, Cornwallis pushed into Virginia, where he was joined by the forces under Arnold. Then he laid waste the country on the James beyond Richmond. Lafayette had only a small force at Richmond, but he handled it with such skill that he gradually forced Cornwallis toward the coast, and the British general encamped at Yorktown, between the James and York rivers.

389. Arnold in Connecticut.—Washington felt the necessity of striking an important blow, and in the summer of 1781 he planned an attack on New York, and to assist in it the French army under Rochambeau marched from Rhode Island to join the Americans on the Hudson River. In the hope of distracting Washington's attention, and thus averting the threatened danger, Sir Henry Clinton sent Arnold with a large detachment to ravage Connecticut. That traitor burned New London, compelled Fort Griswold to surrender, and barbarously butchered its commander, Colonel Ledyard, with many of his men, after they

386. What did Greene do in South Carolina?—387. What followed the battle of Eutaw Springs?—388. What did Cornwallis do in Virginia? What did Lafayette do?

had laid down their arms. Arnold subsequently went to England, where he died, in 1801, poor and despised.

Topics for Review.—Tell what you can about:—

The war in South Carolina—Generals Marion and Sumter—Arnold's treason—The capture of André—Discontent in the army—Greene in the South—Cornwallis in North Carolina and Virginia.

CHAPTER XXII.

THE SIEGE OF YORKTOWN—SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS—PEACE—INDEPENDENCE ACKNOWLEDGED—RESIGNATION OF WASHINGTON.

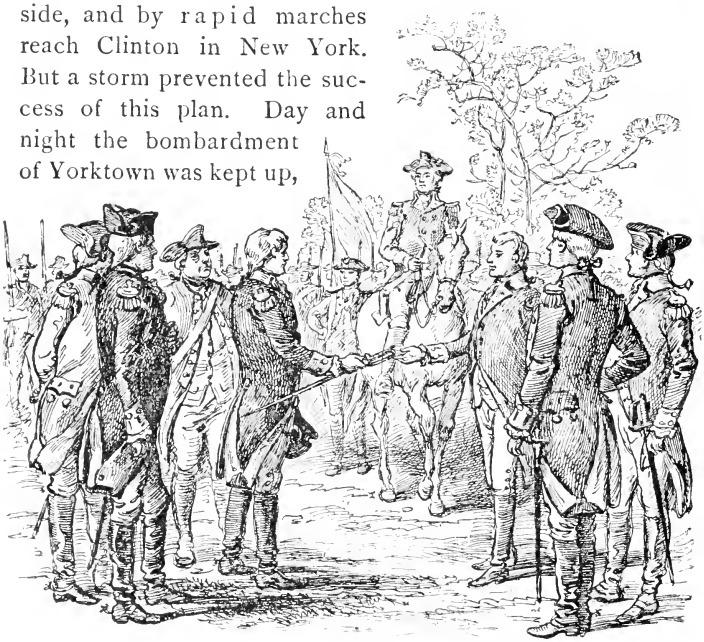
390. The movement against Yorktown.—After careful deliberation Washington and Rochambeau decided not to attack New York, but to strike a sudden blow at Cornwallis, who was at Yorktown, Virginia. Having concerted their plans with Count de Grasse (*deh grahs*), who had lately arrived from Europe with a French fleet, the two French and American armies moved rapidly down to the mouth of the Susquehanna, while Lafayette was ordered to cut off Cornwallis' retreat into Carolina. Now, for the first time, Sir Henry Clinton discovered Washington's real objective point, and despatched Admiral Graves to check the fleet of De Grasse. The two fleets met near the Capes of the Chesapeake, but De Grasse drove off the British, and then, running up Chesapeake Bay, brought down the armies under Washington and Rochambeau.

391. Surrender of Cornwallis.—Cornwallis found himself completely surrounded. He could not escape by land, as the opposing armies barred the way; nor by water, for the French fleet blocked the James and York rivers. By October 14th Washington was ready to attack the British

389. What did Washington plan? Who was sent into Connecticut by Clinton? How, when, and where did Arnold die?—390. What did Washington and Rochambeau decide to do? With whom did they concert their plans? What did Clinton do? Where did the two fleets meet?

lines. A French force on one side and an American on the other assailed and carried two British redoubts.

392. Cornwallis saw that his position was desperate: he tried to break through the lines of the allies, but was repulsed. He next attempted to cross the York River, hoping to force his way through the French lines on the other side, and by rapid marches reach Clinton in New York. But a storm prevented the success of this plan. Day and night the bombardment of Yorktown was kept up,



SURRENDER OF THE BRITISH AT YORKTOWN.

and, finally, on October 19, 1781, General Lord Cornwallis surrendered, with his entire army of over seven thousand men, a hundred cannon, and quantities of arms and ammunition, to Generals Washington and Rochambeau, and the British vessels on the two rivers surrendered to Count de Grasse.

391. In what position did Cornwallis find himself? What happened on October 14th?—392. What did Cornwallis try to do? What took place October 19th, 1781?

393. Effects of the victory.—The good news quickly spread throughout the country: men galloped from town to town announcing that Cornwallis was taken. All hearts were filled with joy, for peace now seemed certain. Soon after the surrender Clinton appeared off the Chesapeake with re-enforcements, but learning of the capture of Cornwallis returned in haste to New York.

394. A treaty of peace.—When the news reached England a new ministry, favorable to peace, was appointed. Negotiations for peace soon after began at Paris, and on November 30, 1782, a provisional treaty was signed by Oswald, the English commissioner, and by John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Henry Laurens, and John Jay on the part of the United States.

395. Independence acknowledged.—During the negotiations a cessation of hostilities was proclaimed in the American army, on April 19, 1783, just eight years after the battle of Lexington, and on September 3d the final treaty of peace was signed. By this treaty England recognized the independence of the United States, and gave up all claim to the territory extending from the Atlantic to the Mississippi River, bounded on the north by the Great Lakes and the St. Lawrence, on the east by the St. Croix River, and on the south by Florida. By a treaty with Spain England restored to that country the ancient colony of Florida.

396. Trouble ahead.—Although the war was ended, all trouble was not over. The country was penniless and in debt. The war had cost over $100,000,000, and $140,000,000 were still owing. The army had not been paid for a long time and was suffering greatly, being in want of food and clothes. Much dissatisfaction was expressed

393. What were the effects of the victory?—394. When was a provisional treaty of peace signed? Who were the American Commissioners?—395. How long had the hostilities lasted? When was the final treaty signed? What did England give up to the United States?

by both officers and men; at one time a mutiny was imminent, and it was proposed to make Washington king; but this proposition he indignantly rejected. Finally he prevailed on Congress to make provision for the payment of the soldiers, and by his wisdom trouble was averted.

397. The British leave the United States.—In November the army was disbanded, and during the course of the month the British, amid the great rejoicing of the people, evacuated New York, Charleston, and Savannah. They continued, however, to hold Detroit and other posts on the Lakes. "Evacuation Day" is still celebrated in New York, on the 25th of November.

398. Washington resigns.—After the disbanding of the army Washington proceeded to Annapolis, where Congress was in session, and presented his account of all money that had passed through his hands; he then resigned his commission as general, December 23, 1783.

399. Mifflin's words to Washington.—General Thomas Mifflin, then President of Congress, addressed Washington, in reply, in these memorable words: "Having defended the standard of liberty in this new world; having taught a lesson useful to those who inflict and those who feel oppression, you retire from the great theatre of action with the blessings of your fellow-citizens; but the glory of your virtues will not terminate with your military command—it will continue to animate remotest ages." The illustrious Washington then retired to his home at Mount Vernon, followed by the love of the American people.

400. Result of the war.—Thus, after a war of eight years, the thirteen colonies, by the help of France, had compelled England to acknowledge their independence. The United States was recognized by France, Spain, and

396. What trouble followed the close of the war? What was proposed to Washington? How did he receive the proposition? How did he avert trouble?—397. When did the British leave New York?—398. When did Washington resign his commission?—400. What was the result of the war?

Holland, and in a short time by all the powers of Europe. The sturdy bravery of the people, their industrious habits, sobriety, and morality were praised by all. With a vast country, full of natural resources, the Americans could with the blessing of Almighty God hope for the greatest prosperity.

Topics for Review:—

The battle of Yorktown—Defeat of Cornwallis—A treaty of peace—Independence acknowledged—The British quit our soil—Washington resigns.

REVIEW III.—THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE.

CAUSES OF THE REVOLUTION:—

England in debt—Proposes to tax America—The Americans protest—The Stamp Act—Stamped paper refused—The tax on tea—The Boston Massacre—The Quebec Bill.

THE BEGINNING OF THE WAR:—

The first Continental Congress.—The fight at Lexington—The battle of Bunker Hill—Washington in command—Evacuation of Boston—The Declaration of Independence.

PROGRESS OF THE WAR:—

The Campaign at the North—The Campaign at the South—Valley Forge—Naval Operations.

FRIENDS AND TRAITORS:—

Lafayette, Steuben, and other foreign officers assist our country—An Alliance with France—The treason of Arnold—André's capture and execution.

THE CLOSE OF THE WAR:—

The surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown—Peace concluded—Independence acknowledged—Resignation of Washington.

Part IV.—The United States.

CHAPTER XXIII.

The Administrations of Washington and Adams.

401. The Articles of Confederation.—From the time of the Declaration of Independence the general affairs of the United States were managed by the Continental Congress. This body was composed of delegates from the thirteen States; these delegates chose one of their number to be President, and he became the head of the government. The Continental Congress raised armies, fitted out ships of war, made treaties with other countries, borrowed money, and issued notes known as Continental currency.

402. Want of power in Congress.—Under the Articles of Confederation Congress had no power to levy taxes on the people of the States or raise a revenue by collecting duties on goods imported into the country. To pay the debts incurred, to maintain the government and carry on the war, Congress from time to time called upon each State to pay its share. As these payments were slow in coming in, the Continenta treasury was often empty. Then Congress lost all credit, and the paper money it issued fell so low in value that the people refused to take it.

403. After peace was made with England Massachusetts attempted to raise money by taxation to pay what was due to Congress, but the result was a rebellion, known as

401. By what body were the general affairs of the United States managed after the Declaration of Independence? How was this body composed? What did it do?—402. What power did Congress not possess? How did it try to obtain money? With what result? What is said of the paper money issued by Congress?

Shays' Rebellion, from the name of its leader. Then the people began to see that Congress must have greater powers.

404. The Constitutional Convention.—Accordingly, a convention of delegates from all the States was held in Philadelphia in 1787, with George Washington presiding. This body of wise and patriotic men, after long deliberation, adopted the Constitution of the United States for the government of the country. Under this a President was to be elected every four years by a body of electors chosen by the people, and Congress was to consist of a Senate composed of two members from each State and a House of Representatives, to which each State sent members according to its population. The *power to make laws* was vested in Congress; the *power to enforce laws* was intrusted to the President; and the *power to interpret laws* was given to certain courts. The Constitution when first made public met with violent opposition from many able men, but it was finally adopted, in 1788, by all the States except Rhode Island and North Carolina. Elections were then held for President and members of Congress.

405. Washington the first President.—The first election under the Constitution was held in January, 1789, and the following month the electors met, and, without a dissenting vote, chose GEORGE WASHINGTON as the first President of the United States. This was to be expected, for he had shown such ability and wisdom that his countrymen naturally turned to him as the foremost man of the Republic. John Adams of Massachusetts was elected Vice-President. The 4th of March was

GEORGE WASHINGTON.

403. What caused Shays' Rebellion?—404. When and where did the first National Convention meet? What did it adopt? How often and by whom is a President elected? Of what does Congress consist? What power is vested in Congress? In the President? In the courts?

the day fixed for the inauguration, but there was delay in the assembling of Congress at New York, then the seat of government.

406. The new government organized. — Washington's journey to New York was a triumphal march, the people, old and young, turning out in thousands to pay him honor and to show their love and respect. He was inaugurated on April 30, 1789, on the balcony of Federal Hall, on the corner of Wall and Nassau Streets, New York, and at once entered on his duties. He appointed Thomas Jefferson Secretary of State, Alexander Hamilton Secretary of the Treasury, and Henry Knox Secretary of War. The Catholics of the United States sent an address to Washington congratulating him on his election and on the prospects of happiness to be enjoyed under his administration. In his answer to this address the President showed his appreciation of the service rendered by Catholics in the war, and said: "I presume that your fellow-citizens will not forget the patriotic part which you took in the accomplishment of their Revolution and the establishment of their government, or the important assistance which they received from a nation in which the Roman Catholic faith is professed."

407. One of the first acts of Congress was to impose a duty on all goods coming in from foreign countries, as this was thought to be the kind of tax the people would feel the least. By this means a revenue was secured to the government, and in a few years the debt of the Revolution was paid off. As North Carolina and Rhode Island would be considered foreign States, they made haste to adopt the Constitution, and thus all the thirteen colonies were included in the United States.

405. Who was elected first President of the United States? Who Vice-President?—406. When was Washington inaugurated? Who composed his cabinet?—407. What was one of the first acts of Congress?—What was the result? Why did North Carolina and Rhode Island make haste to adopt the Constitution?

408. Indian troubles.—The Indians in the West, encouraged by British agents, made frequent attacks on the white settlers, killing many and carrying off others as prisoners. Two expeditions sent against them under Generals Harmer and St. Clair were repulsed with great slaughter. Finally Major-General Anthony Wayne, whose daring courage had earned him the nick-name of "Mad Anthony," was despatched to subdue them. Moving with great rapidity and caution, he attacked and completely defeated the Indians in a battle at the rapids of the Maumee, August, 1794, in sight of a British fort. The following year the Indians made peace, and gave up much of the lands they claimed.

409. Religious changes.—The independence of the country led to changes in religious bodies. The clergy and people who belonged to the Church of England separated from it and formed the Protestant Episcopal Church, and for each State where there were many members a bishop was elected. The bishops in England at first refused to consecrate bishops for the United States, but when parliament passed an act in regard to the matter they consented. Other religious denominations also organized so as not to depend on any English body.

410. The Catholic Church.—The Catholics in the United States had been under the care of a Vicar-Apostolic living in London, but in 1784 Pope Pius VI. appointed Rev. John Carroll, a learned and patriotic priest and cousin of one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, Prefect-Apostolic of the Catholics of the United States, and in 1789 made him Bishop of Baltimore. Bishop Carroll belonged to the Society of Jesus before its suppression. In April, 1808, when Baltimore was made an Archiepiscopal See Dr. Carroll became its archbishop. A theological seminary, colleges, convents, and schools were

408. What Indian troubles arose? Who was sent against them? Who finally subdued them?—409. Tell what religious changes took place.

soon established, and the publication of Catholic books began. In most States all religions were made equal, but the spirit of the old penal laws was not completely extinguished, and in some places a State Church was retained. Even to this day Catholics in the army and navy and in public institutions are sometimes compelled to attend Protestant services.

ARCHBISHOP CARROLL.

411. A seat of government.—The selection of a seat of government was soon taken up by Congress, and it was decided that it should be for ten years in Philadelphia. After that time, as it was thought wise to have it independent and not in the jurisdiction of any particular State, it was determined to accept an offer made by Virginia and Maryland of a district ten miles square lying on the Potomac River. The land ceded was called the District of Columbia, and in this a city, called Washington, was to be founded which was to be the Capital of the United States. The new city was laid out by Major l'Enfant (*lon-fon'*), a Catholic officer who had served in the Revolution and possessed great ability as an engineer.

412. New States admitted.—Under the wise administration of Washington the country prospered. A territory

410. What can you tell of Bishop Carroll?—411. What place was first chosen as the seat of government? What offer was made to Congress by Virginia and Maryland? What city became the permanent seat of government?

lying between New York and New Hampshire, and claimed by both States, was admitted by Congress in 1791 as the State of Vermont; in 1792 the western part of Virginia was admitted as the State of Kentucky; and in 1796 the western part of North Carolina as the State of Tennessee. By referring to the map of "The Territorial Growth of the United States" at the beginning of the book, the pupil can learn just when the different States came into the Union and how the territory was acquired.

413. Political parties.—Washington was re-elected President in 1792. About this time two political parties sprung up, known as the *Federalists* and the *Republicans*. The former favored a strong Federal government, and liked the pomp and ceremony of the English court. Alexander Hamilton was regarded as the head of the party, which embraced the more wealthy citizens. The *Republicans*, or *Democrats*, as they were afterward called, desired a simple form of government; they believed that it should be strictly democratic, and that the power should be more in the hands of the people of the individual States and less under control of the United States. Thomas Jefferson was considered the head of this party.

414. The recall of the French minister. — The great French Revolution then convulsed Europe, and the Republicans favored France, out of gratitude for the aid she had given us in our struggle. The Federals, however, regarded her course as dangerous. Washington believed in strict neutrality, and when "Citizen Genet" (*zheh-nay'*), who was sent as Minister to the United States, caused trouble by recruiting troops in this country and fitting out privateers, Washington demanded his recall.

415. A new treaty with England.—In 1795 the boundary-

412. What new States were admitted, and when?—413. Who was elected President in 1792? What political parties sprung up? How did they differ? Who were the leaders of these parties?—414. How was the French Revolution regarded by the two parties? Why was the recall of Citizen Genet demanded?

line between the Spanish possessions of Louisiana and Florida and the United States was settled with Spain by Washington, and he obtained from that country Natchez, which she had held till then. Washington also sent John Jay to England to arrange a treaty. By this treaty the English surrendered the Western forts, and other matters in dispute were settled.

416. John Adams, second President.—As Washington declined to hold the Presidency for a third term, John Adams, the nominee of the Federalists, was elected the second President of the United States, and Thomas Jefferson, the candidate of the Republicans, having received the next highest number of votes, became Vice-President. Adams was inaugurated as President in 1797, and Washington then retired to private life in his home at Mount Vernon.

JOHN ADAMS.

417. Hostilities with France.—The wars in Europe caused no little injury to American commerce. England and France both issued orders under which many American vessels were seized. Envoys sent from this country to France to secure peace were not received, but were privately informed that a large loan to France and bribes to the heads of her government might bring about the desired end. At this the Americans became indignant. "Millions for defence, but not one cent for tribute" was the popular cry, and war seemed unavoidable. An American army was raised and American ships of war attacked those of France. Captain Truxton, in the frigate "Constellation," gallantly upheld the honor of his country, and defeated two French frigates. Happily war was averted, for France

415. What boundary-line was settled with Spain in 1792? What was settled by the new treaty with England?—416. Who was elected second President of the United States? Who Vice-President? What did Washington do?

saw that America was in earnest, and in 1800 Napoleon Bonaparte, who was then First Consul and ruler of France, made a favorable treaty with this country.

418. The Alien and Sedition Acts.—In 1798 Congress passed what are known as the Alien and Sedition Laws. These were very unpopular, and made Adams many enemies. By the Alien Act the President was empowered to send out of the country any foreigner conspiring against

MOUNT VERNON.

the peace of the State. The Sedition Law punished severely any publication in which the government was attacked. The Republicans claimed that the Alien Law took away the right of trial by jury and the Sedition Law was opposed to freedom of speech.

419. Death of Washington.—On December 14, 1799, George Washington, after a short illness, died at Mount

417. What trouble arose with France? What proposition was made to the United States? What was the reply? What was done by Captain Truxton? How was war averted?—418. What laws were passed by Congress in 1798? How were they received by the people? What was the Alien Act? The Sedition Law?

Vernon, at the age of sixty-eight years. Congress mourned him as "first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen." The grief throughout the country was universal, and in every place the people met to deplore the death of the Father of his Country. His remains lie in the vault at Mount Vernon, venerated by the whole country; his birthday is still kept as a holiday.

420. Washington, the Capital of the United States.—In the year 1800 public buildings were erected in the city of Washington, and it became the seat of government of the United States and the residence of the President. The building in which Congress was to hold its sessions was called the Capitol.

THE CAPITOL, WASHINGTON.

Topics for Review:—

Shays' Rebellion—The Constitutional Convention—Washington the first President—Duties on imports—Religious changes—New States—Political parties—John Adams the second President—Trouble with France—The Alien and Sedition Acts—Death of Washington.

419. When and where did Washington die? How was he mourned by Congress? How was the country affected by his death? Where was he buried?—420. When was the seat of government removed to Washington? What building was called the Capitol?

CHAPTER XXIV.

THE ADMINISTRATIONS OF JEFFERSON AND MADISON.

421. Thomas Jefferson, third President.—At the next election Thomas Jefferson was chosen President, and was inaugurated in the Capitol at Washington, on March 4, 1801. Aaron Burr was elected Vice-President.

422. The purchase of Louisiana.—The most important event of Jefferson's administration was the purchase, in 1803, of Louisiana from France. This had been ceded to France by Spain in 1800. The price paid by the United States was $15,000,000; it was a most important purchase, for by it was not only secured the right to the free navigation of the Mississippi, but more territory was acquired than all we before possessed.

THOMAS JEFFERSON.

423. Louisiana was originally settled by the French, but from 1763 had belonged to Spain. It extended from the source of the Mississippi to its mouth, 3,160 miles, and was bounded at the north by British territory and at the south by Mexico. It also embraced the coast on the Gulf of Mexico to the River Perdido. The population was about forty-two thousand. New Orleans, the capital and largest town, had a government house, barracks, hospitals, a cathedral, and schools. Above were Natchitoches on the Red River, some small places on the Arkansas, and in

421. Who was third President?—Who Vice-President?—422. What was the most important event of Jefferson's administration? What was paid for Louisiana?

Upper Louisiana St. Louis, St. Genevieve, and Cape Girardeau. The lower part was soon organized as the territory of Orleans.

424. The people, of Spanish and French origin, were all Catholics, and were attended by priests and a bishop residing at New Orleans. The clergy were supported by the king. There was also at New Orleans an ancient convent of Ursuline nuns, who maintained an academy and directed a hospital and an orphan asylum.

425. In 1803 Ohio was admitted as a State, and Indiana and Mississippi received a territorial government.

426. The Barbary States punished.—The Barbary States in the north of Africa lying on the Mediterranean had for centuries carried on a piratical warfare against the vessels of all countries that did not pay them tribute, and persons captured on these vessels were sold as slaves. The United States had paid tribute for some years, but in 1803 resolved to do so no more, but to punish the pirates. Accordingly, the frigate "Philadelphia" was sent against them, but she ran aground in the harbor of Tripoli (*trip'o-lee*) and was captured with her officers and crew.

427. The following year Lieutenant Stephen Decatur entered the harbor of Tripoli at night in a small vessel; he bravely boarded the "Philadelphia," killed the crew, and burned the frigate. He then made his escape, without losing a man. A few months later Commodore Edward Preble bombarded Tripoli, and in 1805 the Pasha (*pash-au'*), as the Turkish governor is called, was glad to make peace.

428. Algiers compelled to submit.—The chastisement of Tripoli had a good effect for the time, but in 1812 the ships

423. What was the extent of Louisiana? What can you say of New Orleans?—424. By whom were the Catholics of this territory attended? —425. When was Ohio admitted as a State?—426. What had been done for centuries by the Barbary States? What was done by the United States in 1803?—427. What was done the following year by Stephen Decatur? When did Tripoli make peace?

of the Dey (*day*), or governor of Algiers (*al-jeerz'*), another of the Barbary States, made war on American commerce. Commodore Decatur was sent against him and administered such punishment that the Dey humbly signed a treaty in which he agreed to give up all American prisoners and exact no more tribute. From that time the Barbary States gave little trouble.

429. Jefferson's second term.—In 1804 Thomas Jefferson was elected President for the second time, and George Clinton, who had been governor of New York during eighteen years, from 1777 to 1794, was chosen Vice-President. Burr, once so eminent, had fallen in popular esteem. He was a man of brilliant intellect, but entirely wanting in principle. In July, 1804, he killed in a duel Alexander Hamilton, a man of great ability. His waning fortunes made Burr desperate, and he formed a plot to set up a new government in the West and invade Mexico. For this he was arrested and tried; for want of evidence, however, he was released, but the people believed he intended treason.

430. English hostility and the "right of search."—The war which was still going on between England and France bid fair to destroy American commerce. Both English and French ports were in a state of blockade, and even neutral vessels—that is, those which took neither side—were forbidden to enter those ports. Hence all carrying trade was at an end for the time. England needed seamen, and besides showing great hostility to the United States and destroying our vessels on the slightest pretence, she exercised what was known as the "right of search." By this she claimed the right to stop our ships on the sea and take off any one born in Great Britain. As English

428. What trouble arose with Algiers in 1812? Who was sent there and what did he do?—429. Who was elected President in 1804? Who Vice-President? What tragic event happened in 1804? What plot did Burr form?

officers decided the nationality of men, many native Americans were thus forced into the British service. This was very trying to the temper of Americans. In June, 1807, the British frigate "Leopard" fired into the American frigate "Chesapeake" because the commander of the latter refused to give up four men claimed as British deserters. In the attack three men of the "Chesapeake" were killed, a number wounded, and four of her crew were carried off. Three of these men, as was afterward proved, were American citizens.

431. Embargo and Non-intercourse.—To put a stop to such outrages, Congress adopted a strange course. It passed a law in 1807, called an "Embargo," which forbid any vessel to leave our ports, and another law, called "Non-intercourse," which prohibited all trading with nations at war in Europe. Instead of benefiting American commerce these laws injured it, for our exports fell to forty millions of dollars in a year. The laws were repealed in 1808.

JAMES MADISON.

432. James Madison, fourth President.—James Madison, of Virginia, was elected in 1808 to succeed Jefferson, and Clinton was re-elected Vice-President. Madison was inaugurated March 4, 1809, at a time of great difficulty. England and the United States were on the point of war. The insults heaped on the United States by Great Britain had overtaxed the patience of the American people. On May 16, 1811, the British sloop-of-war "Little Belt" fired into the American frigate "President." The

430. How was American commerce affected by the war between England and France? What right did England claim? What was the result? What happened in June, 1807?—431. What laws were passed by Congress in 1813? What was the result? When were they repealed?

fire was returned with such heavy broadsides that thirty-two of the British vessel's crew were killed or wounded.

433. Tecumseh's conspiracy.—The Indians in the West were still influenced by English agents, and Tecumseh, a chief of great ability, formed a union of many tribes against the Americans. General William Henry Harrison, Governor of Indiana Territory, marched against the savage foe. He encamped near the town of Tippecanoe (*tip-pee-kan-oo'*), and was there suddenly attacked, November 7, 1811, by the Indians. Harrison drove them off, however, with considerable loss, and they abandoned their town. This victory defeated the schemes of Tecumseh, but he afterward entered the British army, and was rewarded with the rank of brigadier-general.

434. A second war with England.—Affairs with England grew worse every day, and failing to obtain redress for the insults offered and the injury done, the United States in June, 1812, declared war. The first operations were begun in the West, and were disastrous and disgraceful. General William Hull, the Governor of Michigan Territory, invaded Canada, but after some skirmishing fell back to Detroit. Here he was followed by an army under General Brock, the Governor of Canada, but instead of defending the place, Hull surrendered, August 16th, without striking a blow, and Michigan fell into the hands of the British.

435. Fighting on Niagara River.—In October, 1812, a detachment of American troops under General Van Rensselaer crossed the Niagara River into Canada, and carried a British post at Queenstown. The British under General Brock attempted to recapture it, but Brock was killed and his troops were repulsed. Another attempt by the English was successful, and Van Rensselaer retired to New

432. What was the feeling between England and the United States at the time? What took place on May 16, 1811?—433. By whom were the Indians defeated? What did Tecumseh do afterward?—434. What led to a second war with England? What was the result of the first operations? What is said of General Hull?

York State. In these actions the American militia showed great gallantry, and Lieutenant-Colonel Winfield Scott, afterward general, was especially distinguished.

General Winfield Scott.

436. Naval operations.—Though the army had met with little success thus far, there was great enthusiasm over the naval victories. England's oppression of our sailors, whom it so often tore from our ships, made every seaman thirst for revenge. Our government fitted out several frigates, and allowed privateers to capture British merchantmen.

437. American victories at sea.—On August 19, 1812, the frigate "Constitution," commanded by Captain Isaac Hull, engaged a British frigate, the "Guerrière" (*gare-re-air'*), a vessel about equal in size and in crew. A desperate fight followed, but in forty minutes the "Guerrière" hauled down her flag and surrendered.

438. On October 18th the American sloop-of-war "Wasp" captured the "Frolic," a British sloop-of-war. Seven days later Commodore Decatur, who as a young man had boarded and set fire to the "Philadelphia" (see ¶ 428), while cruising near the Canary Islands in the frigate "United States," attacked the British frigate "Macedonian," and after a stubborn fight the British colors were lowered, and the "Macedonian" surrendered.

439. Then, on December 29th, came another victory for the "Constitution," or "Old Ironsides," as she was popularly called, which resulted in the capture of the British frigate "Java," near the coast of Brazil.

435. Describe the fighting on Niagara River.—436. What was done by our government?—437. What took place August 19, 1812?—438. What naval victories were gained by the Americans in October, 1812?—439 On December 29th, what took place?

440. English losses.—England had so long claimed to be mistress of the seas that these repeated defeats at the hands of a small navy were very hard for her to bear. She was fast losing her renown. Contrary to all justice, she had in the four or five preceding years seized many American vessels, but now in a few months she had lost several frigates, and more than three hundred of her vessels had been captured by American privateers.

441. The first great reverse to the Americans was in the loss of the frigate "Chesapeake." She was lying in Boston Harbor when she was challenged to a fight by the British flag-ship "Shannon." The "Chesapeake" was only partly equipped and in no condition for a battle, but her gallant commander, Captain James Lawrence, eagerly accepted the challenge. A furious engagement followed; Lawrence was mortally wounded, and the British captured the "Chesapeake." With his last breath Lawrence exclaimed, "Don't give up the ship!" and though that command could not be obeyed, his words were from that time a rallying-cry for American sailors and soldiers, and led to many a victory.

442. The new campaign on land.—The victories on the ocean stimulated the army to win equal triumphs. Operations against Canada were renewed. An army under General William Henry Harrison was sent to recover Michigan; General Dearborn was ordered to protect the Niagara frontier, and General Hampton to move upon Canada by way of Lake Champlain.

443. Winchester's defeat at Raisin River.—General Harrison ordered a division of his army under General Winchester, a veteran of the Revolution, to menace Detroit; but that general was attacked at Raisin River by a force of British and Indians under General Proctor, and after a slight action surrendered. Many of the Americans,

440. What is said of England in this paragraph?—441. Describe the first American naval loss. What were Lawrence's last words?—442. What operations were begun on land?

wounded and prisoners, were brutally massacred by the Indians.

444. Fort Meigs and Fort Stephenson.—After Winchester's defeat Harrison took up a position at Fort Meigs (*mĕgz*), on the Maumee. Here he was besieged, May 1, 1813, by Proctor, but when American re-enforcements arrived the enemy abandoned the siege and retired. Toward the end of July Proctor attacked Fort Stephenson, a weak post, held by Major Croghan, a young man of twenty-two. Though Croghan had but one cannon and 160 men he compelled the English forces, which outnumbered him two to one, to retreat before his fire. As humane as he was brave, Croghan after the battle supplied the wounded English with water and cared for them as best he could.

445. Perry's victory on Lake Erie.—As the British were still in possession of Michigan they had control of the Lakes. To drive them from these waters the government sent Commodore Oliver H. Perry to fit out a fleet on Lake Erie and aid General Harrison in his campaign. By great exertions Perry managed to launch a few vessels, and in September, 1813, sailed out on the lake to meet the British fleet. A fierce battle followed. Perry's ship, the "Lawrence," was riddled with shot, but leaping into a small boat, the gallant sailor carried his flag, which bore the motto "Don't give up the ship!" to another vessel, the "Niagara," and kept up the fight. At last he broke through the enemy's line, and soon after the whole British fleet surrendered. Perry sent the news of his victory to General Harrison in a short and modest message: "We have met the enemy, and they are ours."

Topics for Review:—

The purchase of Louisiana—The "right of search"—Embargo and Non-intercourse—At war again with England—American victories at sea—Perry's victory.

445. What was the result of the battle at Raisin River?—444. Describe the battle at Fort Meigs and at Fort Stephenson.—445. Describe Perry's fight on Lake Erie.

CHAPTER XXV.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF MADISON—CONTINUED.

446. Defeat of Proctor and death of Tecumseh.—Perry's victory gave the Americans entire control of Lake Erie. As Michigan was no longer safe for the British, Proctor retreated into Canada, hotly pursued by Harrison. On October 5, 1813, Harrison overtook the enemy at the river Thames (*tĕmz*), and a fierce battle took place between the Americans on one side and the British regulars and the Indians on the other. Harrison attacked with such spirit that the British soon gave way. The Indians held out more bravely, till they saw their great chief, Tecumseh, fall dead. Then they, too, fled.

447. Dearborn and Hampton.—The main object now was the invasion of Canada. General Dearborn captured York (now Toronto) and Fort George, in Canada, but the victories proved of no signal advantage. General Wade Hampton in his advance into Canada was completely defeated at Chateauguay (*shah'to-gay'*).

448. Chippewa and Lundy's Lane.—On the Niagara frontier the Americans were more successful. On July 3, 1814, General Jacob Brown crossed the Niagara River and captured Fort Erie, and two days later he defeated the British under General Riall, at Chippewa. General Drummond then took command of the British, and collecting his forces attacked Brown at Lundy's Lane. It was a stubborn battle, but the American[illegible] ably led by Generals Scott and Ripley [illegible] however, gaining any

446. What were the consequences of Perry's victory? What Indian chief was killed at the Thames? 447. Name two American generals that invaded [illegible]. What was the result?

decisive victory. They then fell back on Fort Erie, where they were attacked, August 15, by General Drummond. He attempted to recapture the fort, but was repulsed with heavy loss and compelled to draw off his forces.

449. The battle of Plattsburg.—An English army, 14,000 strong, under General George Prevost, supported by a flotilla of vessels, entered New York State by way of Lake Champlain. They were met, September 11, near Plattsburg by General Alexander Macomb (*ma-koom'*) with less than 3,000 men and a small fleet under Commodore Thomas Macdonough (*mak-dun'ŭh*). While Macomb held the English army at bay, Macdonough engaged their fleet, and so successful was his attack that at the end of two hours every British vessel had surrendered. Prevost, who had lost nearly twenty-five hundred men, then retreated to Canada.

450. Washington captured and burned.—England by this time had obtained peace in Europe, and could use her powerful navy against the coast of the United States. On August 18, 1814, a British fleet entered Chesapeake Bay and landed an army of five thousand men under General Ross. It was evident that an attack was intended on Washington, the capital of the country, but no army of sufficient strength to check the enemy could be gathered in time. A small body of militia attempted to resist them at Bladensburg, but was at once repulsed. Ross then entered Washington without resistance; he burned the Capitol, the President's house, and several public buildings, and destroyed all the government archives and the national library. A squadron from the fleet plundered Alexandria.

451. The attack on Baltimore.—Ross next sailed for

448. Describe the battle of Chippewa and of Lundy's Lane. What generals led the Americans?—449. What army entered New York by way of Lake Champlain? Who opposed the British? What was the result?—450. What British army landed on our coast August 18th, 1814? What city was captured? What did the British do after they entered Washington?

Baltimore, and landing near the mouth of the Patapsco River marched toward the city, while the British fleet attacked Fort McHenry, near that city. The fort repulsed the fleet, and Ross was killed in a skirmish with some of the militia called out to defend Baltimore. General Brooke, who succeeded to the command of the British, despairing of capturing the city, embarked his troops and sailed off. It was during the bombardment of Fort McHenry that Francis S. Key, who was held a prisoner on the British fleet, wrote the famous song, "The Star-Spangled Banner."

452. The Creek War.—In April, 1814, British agents in the South excited the Creek Indians to hostilities against the Americans, and as a result outrages and massacres followed. But General Andrew Jackson marched against the savages, defeated them in a series of battles, and compelled them to make peace. Soon after Jackson, finding that the British were making Pensacola, a town in Spanish Florida, the basis of operations against the United States, took that town and drove out the offenders.

453. The British attack New Orleans.—General Jackson was shortly after called to a more important task. On December 14, 1814, General Pakenham, a distinguished officer, entered Lake Borgne (*born*) with an English fleet, and compelled a small American flotilla stationed there to surrender. He also landed an army of twelve thousand men about nine miles from New Orleans. That city was apparently lost, but General Jackson was sent to defend and save it if possible. He collected a small force, and attacked the enemy in their encampment. Then he fortified his own position, using whatever material he could find for breastworks, among other articles, a number of cotton bales.

451. Where did Ross march next? What was the result of the attack on Baltimore? What famous song was written at that time and by whom?—452. What Indian troubles occurred in the South, April, 1814? What did General Jackson do?—453. Describe the movement against New Orleans. How did Jackson fortify the city?

454. The battle of New Orleans.—On January 8, 1815, General Pakenham advanced with all his forces to attack the American lines, his ships holding the river and supporting him. Jackson did not waste his fire; he waited till the English came within range of his riflemen, and then poured his volleys into them with fearful effect. Officers and men were mowed down, and Pakenham himself fell mortally wounded. The British made every effort to carry the American works, but at last retreated in confusion, having lost two thousand men, while the American loss was only thirteen. Jackson was received in triumph in New Orleans, and a grand *Te Deum* was sung in the Catholic Cathedral, where prayers had been offered up for his success.

455. The treaty of Ghent.—There was now a general desire for peace New England, where the Federalists were strongest, had opposed the war from the beginning, and even threatened to leave the Union and unite with Canada, and in December, 1814, a convention of leading Federalists was held at Hartford, and the action of the government severely condemned. In February, 1815, the news reached America that the commissioners of the United States and Great Britain had signed a treaty of peace at Ghent (*gĕnt*), in Belgium, on December 24, 1814. In this treaty no redress was given for the wrongs inflicted on American commerce and no mention of the "right of search" was made, but as England had been taught to respect the United States there was no further trouble on these points.

456. Louisiana and Indiana admitted.—During the war the United States suffered greatly in its commerce; agriculture and manufactures were disturbed; but the country continued to extend. Louisiana became a State in 1812

454. Describe the battle of New Orleans. What was the loss on both sides?—455. What convention was held at Hartford? When and where was the treaty of peace signed? What redress was given the United States for the wrongs inflicted?

and Indiana in 1816. At the election in the fall of 1816 James Monroe, of Virginia, was chosen President and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, Vice-President.

Topics for Review:—

Washington captured and burned—Jackson at New Orleans—Peace concluded.

CHAPTER XXVI.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF MONROE AND OF JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

457. James Monroe, fifth President.—With the beginning of Monroe's administration the country entered on a period of great prosperity. The distress in Europe, caused by the long wars, led thousands of people to emigrate to the United States. Trade revived, factories were established, mines were worked, and new settlements were formed in the West.

JAMES MONROE.

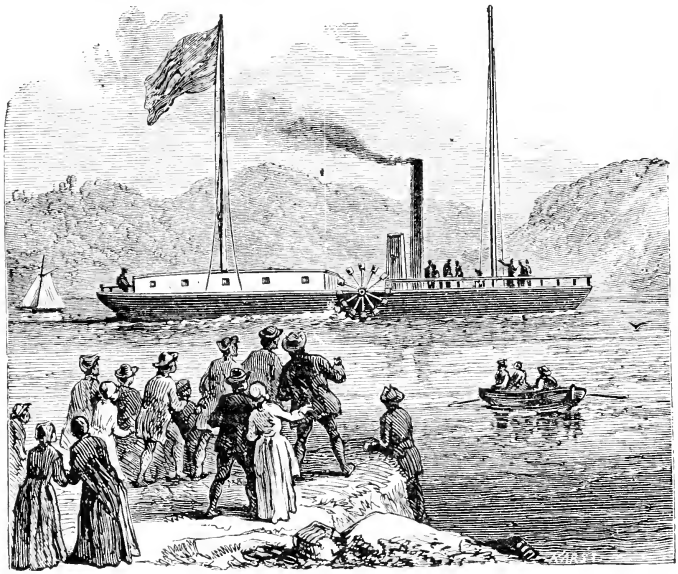
458. The steamboat and the Erie Canal. — Great improvements were to be made, however. Intercourse between the States had been carried on by sailing vessels on the coast, or by flatboats and small vessels up and down the rivers; heavy wagons carried goods over rough roads, and clumsy stages transported passengers.

459. In 1807 Robert Fulton, a native of Pennsylvania, succeeded in constructing the "Clermont," a boat with paddle-wheels at the side, driven by steam, which made successful trips on the Hudson River. Other steamboats

456. What new States were admitted in 1812 and 1816? Who was elected fifth President? Who Vice-President?—458. How had intercourse between the States been carried on? How were goods carried? How were passengers transported?

were soon running on other rivers, and they carried goods and passengers whenever speed was required.

460. Another improvement in navigation was introduced with the Erie Canal, which was begun in 1817 by the energy of Governor De Witt Clinton, of New York. This canal united Lake Erie with the Hudson River, and the



THE "CLERMONT," FULTON'S FIRST STEAMBOAT.

grain and produce of the West could thus be sent cheaply to New York City.

461. Florida purchased from Spain.—Florida still belonged to Spain, but English agents used it as a place from which to excite the southern Indians to war against our people. Finally, in the summer of 1817, when the Seminoles began depredations on the frontier settlements,

459. What did Robert Fulton succeed in constructing? What was the "Clermont"? What soon followed?—460. What other improvement in navigation was introduced? What benefit resulted from the Erie Canal?

General Jackson was sent against them. With the vigor that marked all his actions Jackson marched into Florida, burned a number of Seminole towns, put down the savages, and hanged two Englishmen who were with them.

462. Spain complained of the invasion of her territory, but was not in a position to resent it. Further trouble was avoided, however, by the sale of Florida to the United States in 1819, though the province was not actually delivered up until two years later. By this purchase St. Augustine, founded in 1565, and the oldest city on our coast, came into the United States.

463. Spanish Florida.—Soon after its settlement Florida was attacked by the French under Gourges and by the English under Drake, and both of them did much injury. Great efforts were made to convert and civilize the Indians, and missions were established along the coast as far as the Savannah River, and across the peninsula to Apalache. Books were prepared and printed in the language of the natives. Many missionaries lost their lives at the hands of the Indians whom they endeavored to convert. Among these were Father Peter Corpá and four companions, Franciscans, who were killed by the Indians in 1597, on the coast of Georgia.

464. The downfall of Florida.—When Carolina was founded expeditions were undertaken against Florida. St. Augustine was burned, the missions were destroyed, four priests burned at the stake, and all the Indians who escaped death were carried off and sold as slaves. The settlement of Georgia led to further wars with the English and Florida never recovered any prosperity.

465. Pensacola.—Pensacola was founded in the year 1696, and soon after a fort was established at St. Marks.

461. What was the result of sending Jackson against the Seminoles?—462. Of what did Spain complain? How was trouble avoided?—463. Tell what you can of the settlement of Florida. What was done to convert the Indians?—464. What took place in Florida when Carolina was founded?

Pensacola suffered greatly by wars. It was more than once taken by the French from Louisiana, and during our Revolutionary War, while Florida was held by the English, Pensacola was besieged and taken by Galvez, the Spanish governor of Louisiana. During the English rule a settlement of Minorcans and Greeks was formed at New Smyrna for the cultivation of indigo, but the settlers were so cruelly treated that they revolted and marched to St. Augustine, where their descendants are still.

466. The Slavery Question.—The admission of Missouri as a State was one great question of Monroe's administration. At one time slavery prevailed in nearly all the colonies. It was gradually abolished, however, at the North, but was retained in Maryland and at the South, where negro labor was supposed to be necessary in the cultivation of tobacco, rice, and cotton. Thus the country was divided into States where negroes were held in slavery and States where all were free. The States northwest of the Ohio were all free. Under French and Spanish rule Louisiana had its slaves, and when it was admitted into the Union it was as a slave State.

467. The Missouri Compromise.—Missouri was a part of the vast territory west of the Mississippi purchased of France under the name of Louisiana. When the question of its admission as a State came before Congress in the year 1820, the members of Congress from the North and the West insisted that the new State should be free, while the Southern members argued that as it was already slave territory any Southerner had a right to settle there and bring in his slaves. Both parties were earnest and determined. At last, however, through the exertions of Henry Clay, it was agreed that Missouri should be admitted as a slave State, but that all territory north of its

465. When was Pensacola founded? Relate its history.—466. What great question came up under Monroe's administration? How were the States decided in regard to slavery?

southern line should be forever free. This is known as the Missouri Compromise.

468. Maine admitted to the Union.—In 1820 the people of the District of Maine, which had long been annexed to Massachusetts, applied for admission as a State. At that time Edward Cavanagh (*kav'ah-nah*) by a powerful appeal to the convention obtained equal rights for Catholics, who under Massachusetts law had been excluded from office.

469. The Monroe Doctrine.—At the end of their first term President Monroe and Vice-President Tompkins were re-elected. A memorable event of this second term was the declaration of the Monroe Doctrine. After many of the Spanish provinces south of the United States became republics, Spain thought of reconquering them, with the help of other European nations. Thereupon President Monroe in a message to Congress recommended the recognition of the South American Republics, and declared that the United States would never permit any foreign nation again to establish colonies or gain power in America. This doctrine was indorsed by the whole country, and has been constantly advocated and maintained by our government.

470. The Presidential election of 1824.—In the autumn of 1824, when Monroe's second term of office was drawing to a close, four Presidential candidates were put forward, namely, William H. Crawford, Andrew Jackson, John Quincy Adams, and Henry Clay.

471. In an election for President in this country the citizens vote for *electors*, and each State has as many electors as it has Senators and Representatives in Congress. These electors form what is called the *electoral college*, and a majority of the votes of that body elect the President. In

467. To what territory did Missouri belong? What discussion arose in 1820? What do you know about the Missouri Compromise?—468. What new State was added in 1820? How did Catholics obtain civil rights in Maine?—469. What is the Monroe Doctrine?—470. Name the Presidential candidates put forward in 1824.

1824 no candidate obtained a majority of these votes. In such a case, according to the Constitution of the United States, the House of Representatives proceeds to elect a President, who must be one of the three who receive the highest number of votes in the electoral college. On this occasion the choice fell on John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts, a son of John Adams, the second President.

472. John Quincy Adams, sixth President.—John Quincy Adams was inaugurated March 4, 1825, with John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, as Vice-President. The administration of Adams was uneventful, and though peaceful and prosperous, was hardly popular, owing in great measure to the President's cold manners and his inability to win the sympathies of the people.

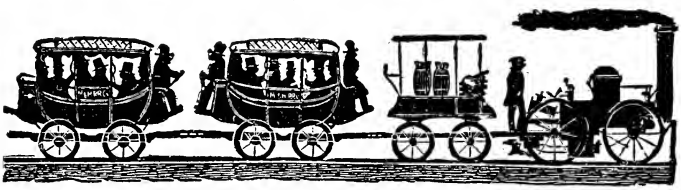
JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

473. Death of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson. — While the country was celebrating the fiftieth anniversary of its independence, July 4, 1826, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson calmly expired. Both of them had signed the Declaration of Independence, fifty years before, and each had been President of the United States.

474. Railroads.—Steam was first successfully used for transportation on land by George Stephenson, in England, in the year 1814. About 1826 attempts were made to use it here, in Massachusetts and in Pennsylvania, and on July 4, 1828, Charles Carroll of Carrollton, then over ninety years of age, broke ground for the construction of a railroad which was to run out of Baltimore; this very road afterward became part of the Baltimore and Ohio

471. How do our citizens vote for the election of President? What is the electoral college? How was the President chosen in 1824? Who was he?—472. What can you say of John Quincy Adams' administration?—473. What two eminent men died in 1825?

Railroad. In the year 1831 the Mohawk and Hudson Railroad, New York, began to carry passengers. The first railroads were rude, but they showed the plan was practicable; soon better roads were laid, and a new means of travel and trade, easy and rapid, took the place of lumbering wagons and slow stage-coaches.



THE FIRST STEAM TRAIN ON THE MOHAWK AND HUDSON RAILROAD, NEW YORK.

475. A protective tariff.—In 1818 Congress passed the first *protective tariff*. A *tariff* is a system of duties or taxes imposed by the government on goods imported into the country. Factories had grown up in many parts of the United States, and the owners, for their own protection and encouragement, asked that a *high duty*, or *protective tariff*, should be imposed on such foreign manufactures as are similar to goods of American make. The question of free trade (no duty) and protection has ever since divided the country.

476. Some idea of the growth of the country to this time may be formed from the fact that the original thirteen States had increased to twenty-four, and the population was about ten millions against the four millions at the beginning of Washington's Administration.

Topics for Review:—

The steamboat and the Erie Canal—Florida purchased—The Missouri Compromise—The Monroe Doctrine—Railroads—A protective tariff.

474. When were railroads introduced in Europe? In America?—475. What bill did Congress pass in 1828? What is a tariff? What a *protective* tariff?—476. What will give an idea of the growth of the country?

CHAPTER XXVII.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF JACKSON AND OF VAN BUREN.

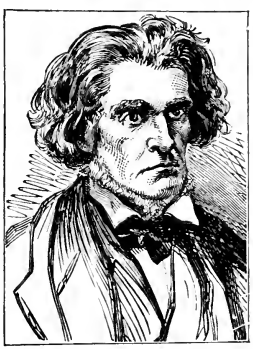
477. Andrew Jackson, seventh President.—In the election of November, 1828, General Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, whose victory at New Orleans and defeat of the Creek Indians made him very popular, was chosen President and John C. Calhoun was re-elected Vice-President. Jackson was a man of great energy and decision of character, with the courage to do what he believed was right, and thoroughly honest. One of his first important acts was to veto, or refuse his consent to, a bill passed by Congress to renew the charter of the United States Bank, which up to that time had held the public funds. Jackson thought it unwise to give so much power to any institution, and on his own authority removed the public moneys and deposited them in various State banks.

ANDREW JACKSON.

478. Political parties.—The country was now divided into two great political parties, the Democrats and the Whigs. The Democrats supported Jackson, and believed that the general government should not use the public money to aid canals and roads through the country or exercise powers not clearly given in the Constitution. The Whigs, led by Henry Clay, of Kentucky, and Daniel Webster, of Massachusetts, favored internal improvements by the government and an increase of its powers.

477. Who was elected President in 1828? What was one of Jackson's most important acts as President?—478. Into what two political parties was the country divided? What were the doctrines of the two parties?

479. Nullification.—In 1832 a new tariff bill was passed, which met with great opposition at the South, where few goods were manufactured. A convention was held in South Carolina, which adopted and acted upon the doctrine advanced by John C. Calhoun, that a State could nullify a law of the United States, and the State even threatened to withdraw from the Union and set up an independent government in case the law was carried out. President Jackson, however, asserted his power, and threatened force, if necessary, to compel obedience to the law. Fortunately, Henry Clay introduced a compromise, whereby the duties were to be gradually reduced, and the matter was thus peacefully settled. In the midst of these troubles an election was held, and Jackson was re-elected President, with Martin Van Buren, of New York, as Vice-President.



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

480. The Indian wars.—Some Indian troubles arose during Jackson's administration. In the Northwest a party of Indians under Black Hawk, a Sac chief, made war on the people of Illinois, and committed many depredations, but an army was sent against them and the Indians were routed and compelled to submit.

481. The Seminole War in Florida proved more serious. The United States government had adopted the policy of removing Indian tribes to the territory west of the Mississippi, where it was supposed no settlements would reach for many years. The Cherokees, Creeks, Choctaws, Chick-

479. Why did the new tariff meet with opposition at the South? What is *nullification?* What did South Carolina threaten to do? What did Jackson threaten? How was the matter peacefully settled?—480. What Indian wars broke out during Jackson's second term of office?

asaws, Wyandots, and Miamis were thus removed. The government made a treaty with some Seminole chiefs by which they agreed to give up their lands and move, but the tribe generally, led by Osceola, a famous chief, refused to acknowledge the treaty.

482. The beginning of the Seminole War. — General Thompson, the United States agent, seized Osceola and put him in irons, which was a great indignity for the proud chief. The cunning Indian at last consented to the treaty and was released, but a few days after he attacked a house where Thompson was dining, and killed him with five others. On the same day, December 28, 1835, another party of Indians attacked a body of 110 men, under Major Dude, on its march through the Everglades. Of Dude's whole command only four escaped alive.

483. Cost of the war.—The war lasted for several years, the Indians fighting desperately, and it was not until 1842 that the power of the Seminoles was completely overthrown, and any large number submitted. Osceola died a prisoner in Fort Moultrie, having been seized when he came in with a flag of truce. The war cost many lives and about thirty millions of dollars.

BISHOP FLAGET.

484. A Catholic Council at Baltimore. — Under the increasing spirit of liberality in religious affairs the Catholic Church spread in the United States. New dioceses were formed, and churches, colleges,

481. What led to the Seminole War?—482. Describe the Seminole War. —483. How long did it last? Where did Osceola die? What did the war cost?

schools, and asylums were established in all the States In 1829 the Catholic bishops of the United States, with the venerable Bishop Flaget, of Bardstown, and the great Bishop England, of Charleston, met, for the first time, in a Provincial Council at Baltimore; Archbishop Whitfield presided, and wise regulations were adopted. About this time the Church and the country met with a loss in the death of Charles Carroll of Carrollton, the last surviving signer of the Declaration of Independence, who died November 10, 1832, universally lamented.

Right Rev. John England, D.D.

485. Bigotry and violence.—The growth of the Church, the establishment of theological seminaries, of academies, and institutions were regarded by some with an evil eye. The religious harmony of the country, too, was disturbed by vile publications, as well as by sermons and lectures attacking the Catholic religion, and a sad result followed.

486. On the night of August 11, 1834, a mob from Boston and Charlestown attacked a fine Ursuline convent and academy at Charlestown, Massachusetts, drove out the defenceless ladies and children, and burned the buildings to the ground. The authorities made no attempt to protect the institution, and the leaders of the mob, though arrested, were discharged after the pretence of a trial. Thus no one was punished for the crime, and the State of

484. What is said of the progress of the Catholic Church in the United States? When and where was the first Provincial Council held? What eminent Catholic and citizen died in 1832?—485. What led to attacks on the Catholics?

Massachusetts has always refused to make the Church any compensation for the loss.

487. Martin Van Buren, eighth President.—The Presidential election of 1836 was warmly contested, but the Democrats elected their candidate, Martin Van Buren, of New York, and Colonel Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, was chosen Vice-President. The administration began in troublous times: great speculations in real estate and rashness in trade brought about the failure of many banks and business houses in 1837. To secure the public money an independent treasury at Washington, with sub-treasuries in other cities, was established by Congress, and this system has been maintained to the present time.

MARTIN VAN BUREN.

488. The rebellion in Canada.—Troubles occurred in Canada which excited sympathy in the States near that British colony. Many Americans, especially those of New York, wished to join the insurgents, but President Van Buren issued a proclamation and took precautions to prevent any organized bodies from crossing the frontier. The English government soon put down the rebellion, and many of the Canadian leaders fled to the United States.

489. Texas revolts from Mexico.—More serious troubles occurred in Texas. That province was settled by the Spaniards about 1690, but for a time only Indian missions and a few military posts were there. The city of San Fernando and Fort San Antonio were erected in 1729, and smaller settlements grew up at Nacogdoches and Adayer, near the Red River in Louisiana.

486. What happened at Charlestown in 1834?—487. How did the administration of Van Buren begin? What system was established to secure the public money?—488. What can you say of the rebellion in Canada?—489. Relate the history of Texas.

490. After Mexico became an independent republic many Americans emigrated to Texas. During the frequent revolutions in Mexico laws were passed which were oppressive to Texas, and when the people protested the Mexican government sent troops to force them to submission. Then the Texans took up arms, and were joined by many adventurers from the United States. Several battles were fought, and finally, on April 21, 1836, a Mexican army led by General Santa Anna, President of Mexico, was defeated at San Jacinto by a body of Texans under command of General Samuel Houston (*hū'ston*), and Santa Anna himself was taken prisoner. As one of the results of this victory Texas was recognized as an independent republic by the United States.

Topics for Review:—

New political parties—Nullification—First Provincial Council—An anti-Catholic spirit—Texas revolts.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF HARRISON, OF TYLER, AND OF POLK.

491. William Henry Harrison, ninth President.—In the Presidential election of 1840 the Whig candidate, William Henry Harrison, the hero of Tippecanoe, was elected President and John Tyler, of Virginia, Vice-President. President Harrison was inaugurated March 4, 1841, but died just one month afterward. By the terms of the Constitution John Tyler then became President for the rest of the term.

WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON.

492. John Tyler, tenth President.—President Tyler did

490. Why did Texas rebel against Mexico? When did it become independent?—491. Who were elected President and Vice-President in 1840? How long was Harrison in the Presidential chair? Who succeeded him?

not agree with the Whigs in their views on the bank question, and when Congress passed a bill to revive the United States Bank he vetoed it. This displeased the party that elected him, and, in consequence, all of Tyler's cabinet resigned except Daniel Webster, the Secretary of State.

JOHN TYLER.

493. The Webster and Ashburton Treaty.—At this time a treaty was being negotiated with Great Britain in regard to the boundary-line between Maine and New Brunswick, long a vexed question. Webster on the one side and Lord Ashburton on the other conducted the negotiations. The matter was settled in 1842, and also the northern limit of New York, New Hampshire, and Vermont, thus preventing future difficulty there.

494. Dorr's Rebellion.—In 1842 an attempt to change the constitution of the State of Rhode Island gave rise to two political parties, one known as the "suffrage" (or right to vote) party, the other as the "law and order" party. Under the old constitution, which was no other than the charter granted by Charles II., only those who owned a certain amount of property could vote. A convention was called of those opposed to this, a new constitution was drawn up, and Thomas W. Dorr was elected governor. This the "law and order" people declared illegal. Then Dorr attempted to seize the State arsenal, but was defeated and compelled to flee. He was afterward arrested, tried for treason, and sentenced to imprisonment for life, but was released in a few years. A new constitution was finally adopted, and went into effect in May, 1843.

492. With what views of the Whigs did Tyler disagree? What bill did he veto? What was the consequence?—493. What was settled by the Ashburton treaty?—494. Give an account of Dorr's Rebellion.

495. The Mormons.—In the year 1830 Joseph Smith, living in Western New York, pretended to have received a revelation from Heaven, and founded a religious sect called Mormons. Converts were made, and after no little persecution, being tarred and feathered and driven from place to place, Smith with his followers founded a city in Illinois. Here, for a time, Smith was supreme, but at last he was imprisoned for a breach of the law, and he and his brother were killed by a mob that attacked the jail.

496. The sect of the Mormons did not die with Smith, however. His place was taken by Brigham Young, a man of great shrewdness and force of character. Young led the Mormons to Great Salt Lake, Utah, and there founded Salt Lake City. The place was a desert, but by digging, ditching, and untiring industry it was changed into a garden. In 1850 Utah was organized as a territory and Young was appointed governor. His opposition to the United States judges and other government officers caused his removal the following year, and at one time a war with the Mormons was threatened, but Young submitted at the last moment. He remained chief of the Mormons until his death in 1877. Utah now has a Mormon population of more than a hundred thousand, made up largely of emigrants from England, Norway, and Sweden.

497. Florida, Iowa, and Texas admitted as States.—Before the close of his administration President Tyler approved the act admitting Florida and Iowa into the Union. The question of the admission of Texas was long discussed in Congress, and in March, 1845, a bill for its annexation passed and received the approval of President Tyler. In July the legislature of Texas passed an act of annexation. By these two acts Texas ceased to be an independent republic and became one of the United States.

495. What was the origin of the Mormon sect? How did its founder die?—496. Who succeeded him? What city did he found? What more can you say of Young?—497. What three States were admitted into the Union during Tyler's administration?

498. Native American riots.—About 1842 the Catholics of New York City, under the lead of Bishop Hughes, attempted to bring about a change in the management of the public schools. This gave rise to much bitterness, and the old anti-Catholic spirit was revived throughout the country. In 1844 a new political party, called the "Native Americans," was formed. It was hostile to Catholics and foreigners, and finally brought on a bloody riot in Philadelphia in May, 1844. A house occupied by Sisters of Charity, two churches, one memorable for having first rung out a peal on the Declaration of Independence, the valuable library of the Augustinian Fathers, and a number of dwelling-houses were destroyed, and many persons were killed. A riot was also threatened in New York, but was prevented by the courage and prompt action of Bishop Hughes. The riots in Philadelphia were renewed in July, but were put down by the troops.

ARCHBISHOP HUGHES.

JAMES K. POLK.

499. James K. Polk, eleventh President.—At the election in 1844 the Democrats, who favored the annexation of Texas to the United States, elected James K. Polk, of Tennessee, President and George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, Vice-President.

500. General Taylor sent to the Rio Grande.—Mexico had never recognized the independence of Texas and still

498. What revived the anti-Catholic spirit in the country? What new political party was formed in 1844? Describe the Native American riots.—499. Who succeeded Tyler as President?

claimed it as part of her territory. Besides this, the southwestern boundary of Texas was in dispute. Mexico claimed the Nueces (*nway'sez*) River as the dividing line, while the Texans asserted that the republic extended to the Rio Grande (*ree'o gran'day*). Finding that Mexico would not accept the latter river as the boundary, President Polk ordered a small army under General Zachary Taylor to march across Texas and protect the new frontier.

501. The Mexican War begins.—After placing his military stores at Point Isabel General Taylor erected Fort Brown (now Brownsville) on the bank of the Rio Grande, opposite the Mexican town of Matamoros (*mat'ah-mo'rohs*). In April, 1846, a Mexican army crossed the Rio Grande and began hostilities by attacking a small party of dragoons, which was compelled to surrender on the 26th of April, after a sharp fight.

502. The battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma.—Seeing that his supplies at Point Isabel were threatened, General Taylor hastened to strengthen that post. On his march back to Fort Brown he was attacked, on May 8th, by the Mexicans under General Arista (*ah-rees'tah*) at Palo Alto, but he defeated them with a heavy loss. They renewed the fight, however, the next day at Resaca de la Palma (*ray-sah'kah day lah pal'mah*), but the capture of the chief Mexican battery by Captain May and his dragoons decided the battle, and the Mexicans drew off. Two days later the Congress of the United States declared that war existed by the act of Mexico, and the President was empowered to call for fifty thousand volunteers.

503. Capture of Matamoros.—General Taylor marched on to Fort Brown, which the Mexican batteries at Matamoros had bombarded, killing the commander, Major

500. What led to the Mexican War? Who was sent to protect the new frontier?—501. What fort was erected by General Taylor? What happened in April, 1846?—502. Describe the battle of Palo Alto. When and where did the next battle take place? What is said of Capt. May? What did Congress do?

Brown. Finding that the enemy would continue hostilities, Taylor crossed the river, took possession of Matamoros, and moved on the strong town of Monterey (*mŏn-teh-ray'*), where General Ampudia (*am-poo'dee-ah*) had an army of ten thousand men.

504. The battle of Monterey.—On September 19 Taylor with an army of only six thousand men, mostly volunteers, began the attack on Monterey. His men advanced under a terrible fire from the Mexican works, and entered the town. The fighting continued steadily, till at last, finding resistance hopeless, Ampudia capitulated, and marched out with his whole army.

505. A campaign against Mexico planned.—As the Mexican government showed no signs of yielding, the Secretary of War, at Washington, and General Scott, commander-in-chief of the army, formed a plan of campaign. A fleet was to convey General Scott with an army which was to capture Vera Cruz (*vay'rah krooth*) and march upon the City of Mexico. Taylor was to hold his position on the Rio Grande, and expeditions were to be sent against Chihuahua (*chee'wah-wah*), New Mexico, and California.

506. The battle of Buena Vista.—General Santa Anna, who was now President of Mexico, collected an army of about twenty thousand men to attack Taylor. As a considerable part of his army had proceeded to the coast to join General Scott, Taylor found himself threatened by a force about four times his number. He, therefore, fell back to a strong position on the mountains called Buena Vista (*bway'nah vees'tah*). Here Santa Anna summoned him to surrender and attacked him furiously, February 23, 1847. The Mexican general led the charge himself, but the Americans repulsed him repeatedly, and he was at last forced to withdraw, leaving his dead and wounded on the field.

503. Of what town did Tyler take possession?—504. What was the result of Taylor's attack on Monterey?—505. What was the plan of the campaign against Mexico?—506. What was done by General Santa Anna? What did General Taylor do? Describe the battle of Buena Vista.

507. New Mexico and California captured.—Meanwhile the other American operations succeeded. An army under General Kearney (*kar'nee*) took possession of New Mexico without a battle, and before he could reach California that province had surrendered to Commodore Stockton and Colonel Fremont. Chihuahua was taken soon after by Colonel Doniphan. These movements all diverted the Mexicans from uniting their forces to oppose General Scott.

508. Capture of Vera Cruz.—On March 9, 1847, Scott landed near Vera Cruz with an army of twelve thousand men and besieged the city. Vera Cruz was defended by the Castle of San Juan de Ulúa (*sahn hwan day oo-loo'ah*), but after a furious bombardment, in which 750 soldiers and citizens were killed and much property was destroyed, the city and castle surrendered, March 27th.

509. The battle of Cerro Gordo.—After the loss of Vera Cruz Santa Anna marched with all the force he could collect to oppose Scott, and took up a position at Cerro Gordo. On April 17, however, the Americans carried the enemy's works, and routed their army completely. In this engagement the Mexicans lost about a thousand men and all their artillery.

510. The battles of San Antonio and Churubusco.—As three thousand volunteers whose term of service had expired now left Scott, he awaited re-enforcements and did not advance until August. He then encountered and defeated the Mexicans at San Antonio and Churubusco (*choo-roo-boos'ko*).

511. The battle of Chapultepec.—Scott next attacked the castle of Chapultepec (*chah-pool-te-pek'*), the strongest de-

507. What important territory was captured by General Kearney? What by Commodore Stockton and Col. Fremont? Who captured Chihuahua?—508. What city and castle did Scott capture?—509. Where did Santa Anna next take up a position? What was the result of the engagement at Cerro Gordo?—510. Why did not Scott advance? Where did he next defeat the Mexicans?

fence of the City of Mexico, and carried it by assault on September 13. Seeing that all hope was gone, Santa Anna fled that night with the remnant of his army, and the next day, September 13, 1847, General Scott entered the ancient City of Mexico with his little army of six thousand men.

512. The Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo.—On February 2, 1848, the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo (*gwah-dah-loo'pay hee-dal'go*) was signed between the United States and

GENERAL SCOTT ENTERING THE CITY OF MEXICO.

Mexico. By this treaty Mexico ceded to the United States Texas, New Mexico, and Upper California, and in return received fifteen millions of dollars.

513. Peace was proclaimed by President Polk, July 4, 1848, and so ended a war that General Grant, in later years, pronounced "one of the most unjust ever waged by a stronger against a weaker nation." It cost us the lives

511. What followed the battle of Chapultepec?—512. When was a treaty of peace signed between the United States and Mexico? What new territory was ceded to the former?

of many thousands of brave men and over two hundred millions of dollars.

Topics for Review :—

The Mormons—Native American riots—War with Mexico—Peace.

CHAPTER XXIX.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—NEW MEXICO AND CALIFORNIA — THE ADMINISTRATIONS OF TAYLOR, FILLMORE, PIERCE, AND BUCHANAN.

514. New Mexico.—New Mexico had been explored by Coronada in 1540 (see ¶ 41), but no attempt was made to settle the country. Forty years afterward, when three Franciscans reached one of the towns in New Mexico, and endeavored to convert the natives, they were killed. An expedition under Espejo (*es-pay'ho*), sent to learn their fate, explored the country, and in 1596 John de Oñate (*own-yah'tay*) set out with soldiers and settlers to take possession of it for the King of Spain. Oñate was well received by the people, meeting with resistance only at one place called Acoma (*ah'ko-mah*).

515. First settlement.—Exploration.—Having begun a settlement near the Indian town of San Juan (*sahn hwan*), Oñate set out to explore the country to the northeast. He crossed the buffalo plains and approached the Missouri River. During his absence many of the settlers abandoned the country and set out for Mexico.

516. San Gabriel and Santa Fé.—After his return Oñate founded the settlement of San Gabriel on the west side of the Rio Grande, and explored the country westward to the mouth of the Colorado; Santa Fé, founded about 1605, became the capital. The province grew slowly, as inter-

513. When was peace proclaimed? What did the Mexican War cost us?—514. What religious were killed in New Mexico? What expedition was sent to learn the fate of the Franciscans? Who settled the country in 1596?—515. What more can you say of Oñate?

course with Mexico was difficult. Franciscan missionaries labored in all the Indian towns, converting nearly the whole population, and for nearly two hundred years these Fathers continued to minister to whites and Indians.

517. Expulsion of the Spaniards.—In 1680 some natives, who still adhered to the old heathen rites, organized a conspiracy against the Spaniards. A general massacre took place, and twenty-two Catholic missionaries were put to death. Santa Fé was besieged by a large Indian army, but Governor Otermin with the surviving Spaniards cut his way through and finally reached a place of safety in Mexico.

518. New Mexico reconquered by Vargas.—In 1692 New Mexico was reconquered, with little difficulty, by Vargas, the Indians being greatly reduced by famine and wars among the different tribes. The missions were then restored and continued till Mexico declared itself free from Spain.

519. California.—California was discovered in the time of Cortez, the conqueror of Mexico. For many years the Jesuits conducted flourishing missions in Lower California, and besides converting the natives taught them the arts of civilization. When the Jesuit Order was suppressed the mission work was assigned to the Franciscans. Father Junipero Serra, a man of great experience and ability, established a system of missions which spread over a great part of Upper California, extending from San Diego (*sahn dee-ā'go*) northward.

520. The California missions.—The first of these missions, which in time numbered about twenty, was founded at San Diego in 1769. In these missions the Indians were collected, instructed in the Christian religion, and the young taught to read and write. The natives learned from

516. What other places were founded by Oñate? What city became the capital? What can you say of the missionaries?—517. What took place in 1680? What happened at Santa Fé?—518. When and by whom was New Mexico reconquered?

the missionaries to cultivate the ground and manage cattle, and the more skilful ones to work at different trades. The produce of the missions was shipped to Mexico, and in return whatever was needed at the different stations was

MONUMENT AT MONTEREY TO FATHER JUNIPERO SERRA.

obtained. Every Indian at a mission received all necessary food and clothing from the common stock.

521. The missions destroyed by Mexico.—Under this system the Indians were contented and prosperous, but when Mexico threw off Spanish rule and became independent

519–520. Describe California and its missions.

matters changed: many missionaries were driven away, the missions were appropriated by the State, and all the lands and cattle seized. One missionary actually died of starvation, and when California came into the possession of the United States only a few hundreds of Indians were left of the happy thousands who once filled the old Franciscan missions. The territories added to the United States by the annexation of Texas and the treaty with Mexico had all had a Catholic population of Spanish origin with native Indian converts. Texas and New Mexico were subject to Bishops in Mexico, but, not long before the war, a Bishop had been established in California. There were churches in all the principal towns, but many of them were in a ruinous condition.

WASHING GOLD IN CALIFORNIA.

522. Discovery of gold in California.—Soon after the close of the Mexican War gold was discovered in California, and the prospect of speedy wealth drew great numbers of people there from all parts of the United States and from foreign countries. At first the gold in the streams was

521. How were the missions in California destroyed?

looked for, and when that was exhausted the veins of gold in the rocks were sought and regular mining began.

523. Division among the Democrats.—When the elections of 1848 came round the Whigs nominated General Zachary Taylor, "Rough and Ready," as he was popularly called, whose victories in Mexico gave him a high reputation; the regular Democrats nominated Lewis Cass, of Michigan; and the "Free Soilers," a portion of the Democratic Party opposed to the extension of slavery, nominated Martin Van Buren. Taylor was elected President and Millard Fillmore, of New York, Vice-President. They were inaugurated March 5, 1849.

ZACHARY TAYLOR.

524. Zachary Taylor, twelfth President. Millard Fillmore, thirteenth President.—After serving sixteen months as President Taylor died, July 9, 1850, and Millard Fillmore became President.

MILLARD FILLMORE.

525. The Compromise Bill.—The important event of Fillmore's administration was the passage by Congress, in September, 1850, of what is known as the "Compromise Bill." By this bill California was admitted as a free State, in which slavery was never to be introduced; Utah and New Mexico were made territories without any allusion to

522. Give an account of the finding of gold in California.—523. What candidates for the Presidency were nominated in 1848? Who were the Free-Soilers? Who was elected?—524. How long a time was Taylor President?

slavery; the buying and selling of slaves in the District of Columbia was abolished, but not slavery; and slaves escaping from their masters into a free State were to be given up. This bill was the work of Henry Clay, who again appeared as a peacemaker, and was supposed to settle the slavery question forever. Both Clay and Daniel Webster, the greatest statesmen of their day in this country died in 1852.

526. Franklin Pierce, fourteenth President.—In the Presidential election of 1852 Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, the Democratic candidate, was elected over General Winfield Scott, who was nominated by the Whigs. Pierce was inaugurated as President March 4, 1852, and William R. King, of Alabama, as Vice-President. Under Pierce's administration the United States, in order to form a better boundary with Mexico, purchased from that government some lands, which were afterward formed into the territory of Arizona.

FRANKLIN PIERCE.

527. The question of slavery.—The extension of slavery soon became a subject which greatly divided the people of the United States and excited much bitterness. Settlers were pushing through Missouri and Iowa into the territories of Kansas and Nebraska. According to the compromise of 1820 both would be free States, excluding slavery, but Stephen A. Douglas, Senator from Illinois, disregarding this, introduced a bill in 1854 by which the people in each State at the time of admission were to de-

525. What was the important event of Fillmore's administration? What was the effect of the "Compromise Bill"? Whose work was it? In what year did Clay and Webster die?—526. Who was elected President in 1852? What new territory was purchased under Pierce's administration, and from whom?

cide the question for themselves. After a long debate the bill became a law.

528. Trouble in Kansas.—After the adoption of the bill there was a struggle for the mastery in Kansas between those who wanted slavery introduced and those who opposed its introduction. Civil war followed, and for a long while neither life nor property was safe; at one time there were two capitals and two constitutions in the territory, nor was peace restored until the United States government interfered. In the end the anti-slavery party was victorious, and Kansas was admitted as a free State in January, 1861.

529. The "Know-Nothings."—The spirit of bigotry was not dead. An organization known as the Order of United Americans had spread through the country; its object was to exclude Catholics from office, business, and, as far as possible, from all civil rights. From this order sprung the "Know-Nothing" or American party, which during its brief existence worked much mischief.

530. Street preachers endeavored to stir up the people against their fellow-citizens, the Catholics, and when Archbishop Bedini, Papal Nuncio, arrived here in 1853, a plot was formed to assassinate him, but was happily discovered in time to prevent its execution. In Pittsburg and Cincinnati Archbishop Bedini was mobbed by bodies of bigots, and in a fight which occurred in the latter city between the police and the mob eighteen persons were killed.

531. On October 14, 1854, the Jesuit Father Bapst was tarred and feathered and ridden on a rail at Ellsworth, Maine; Catholic churches were destroyed at Manchester and Dorchester, New Hampshire, at Bath, Maine, and at Newark, New Jersey. A church at Williamsburgh, New

527. What is said here about the extension of slavery? What did Stephen A. Douglas do?—528. Give an account of what took place in Kansas. When was Kansas admitted as a State?—529. How did the Know-Nothings arise?—530. What plot was formed against Archbishop Bedini? What occurred in Pittsburg and Cincinnati?

York, was attacked by a mob and set on fire, but was saved by the arrival of the military.

532. In August, 1855, fearful scenes of bloodshed were enacted in Louisville, Kentucky: an attempt was made to burn the cathedral, a number of houses occupied by Catholics were fired and destroyed, and more than twenty of the inmates were burned alive or shot down by the mob.

533. The rise of the Republican Party.—Those opposed to the extension of slavery so greatly increased in numbers that another political party was formed under the name of Republicans. It was made up principally of the Free Soilers (see ¶ 523) and former Whigs, this latter party having died out.

534. James Buchanan, fifteenth President.—Although the Republican Party was gaining rapidly at the North, the Democrats were still powerful enough to elect James Buchanan of Pennsylvania, President, and John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, Vice-President. The Republican candidate was John C. Fremont, favorably known as the leader of an expedition which made the overland route to California. The "Know-Nothings" nominated Millard Fillmore, but as he received the vote of only one State his party disappeared.

JAMES BUCHANAN.

535. Minnesota and Oregon, free States.—James Buchanan was inaugurated March 4, 1857. The following year Minnesota was admitted into the Union, and in 1859 Oregon came in, both as free States.

531. Give an account of what happened in Maine, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New York.—532. What took place in Louisville, Kentucky, August, 1855?—533. How was the Republican Party formed?—534. Who was elected President in 1856?—535. What two States were admitted during Buchanan's administration?

536. The Dred Scott decision.—Two days after the inauguration of Buchanan the Supreme Court of the United States rendered a decision in the case of Dred Scott, a slave, who sued for his freedom on the ground that his owner had taken him to a free State. The court decided that a slave had no rights under the constitution, and that slave-owners might take their slaves, the same as any other property, into any State. This decision increased the sectional spirit between the North and the South.

537. John Brown in Virginia.—This spirit was still further increased when, in October, 1859, John Brown, who, with his sons, had been active in the troubles in Kansas, attempted, with about twenty associates, to free the slaves in Virginia. He began by seizing the United States arsenal at Harper's Ferry. He was soon overcome, and several of his followers were killed. Brown and the rest were tried, convicted, and hanged December 2, 1859.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

538. Abraham Lincoln, sixteenth President. — When the time came for the Presidential election in 1860 the Republicans were found united and with but one candidate, Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois. The Democrats, on the other hand, were divided. The moderate Democrats nominated Stephen A. Douglas, while another part chose John C. Breckinridge as their candidate. A party in favor of reconciliation between the North and the South nominated John Bell, of Tennessee. Lincoln received a majority of the votes.

536. What is the Dred Scott decision?—537. Give an account of John Brown's attempt to free the slaves in Virginia. What was the result?—538. Who was the Republican candidate for President in 1860? What other candidates were in the field? What parties did they represent? Who was elected?

539. Abraham Lincoln.—The newly-elected President was born in Kentucky, February 12, 1809. His family, who were poor, hard-working people, moved to Indiana in 1816 and afterward to Illinois. Abraham's boyhood was passed in privation and toil. He had not the ordinary opportunities for advancement in life, but he educated himself, studied law, and was admitted to the bar. Then by his courage, industry, and honesty he reached the highest offices in the gift of his adopted State, Illinois, and, finally, the first position in the United States.

Topics for Review.—Tell what you can about :—

New Mexico—California—The "Compromise Bill" of 1850—Troubles in Kansas—The Know-Nothings—The rise of the Republican Party—The Dred Scott decision—John Brown in Virginia—Abraham Lincoln.

REVIEW IV.—THE UNITED STATES.

THE ADMINISTRATIONS OF WASHINGTON AND ADAMS :—

The Articles of Confederation—The Constitutional Convention—Washington the first President—Organization of the new government—A Catholic Archbishop in the United States—Political parties—John Adams, the second President—Trouble with France—The Alien and Sedition Acts—Death of Washington.

THE ADMINISTRATIONS OF JEFFERSON AND MADISON :—

Jefferson elected President—The purchase of Louisiana—Trouble with the Barbary States—The "right of search"—Embargo and Non-intercourse—The election of Madison—At war with England—Naval victories—Washington captured and burned—Jackson at New Orleans—Peace—Louisiana and Indiana admitted to the Union.

THE ADMINISTRATIONS OF MONROE AND JOHN QUINCY ADAMS:—

Monroe, fifth President—The Steamboat and the Erie Canal—Florida purchased—The Missouri Compromise—The Monroe doctrine—The election of John Quincy Adams—Railroads—A protective tariff.

539. Who was Abraham Lincoln? Give an account of his life.

THE ADMINISTRATIONS OF JACKSON AND VAN BUREN:—

The election of Jackson—Nullification—Indian Wars—A Catholic Council—Bigotry and violence—The election of Van Buren—Texas revolts from Mexico.

THE ADMINISTRATIONS OF HARRISON, TYLER, AND POLK:—

Harrison, President for one month—Tyler, tenth President—The Webster and Ashburton treaty—The Mormons—Florida, Iowa, and Texas admitted to the Union—Native American riots—Polk, eleventh President—War with Mexico—The treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo—New Mexico and California—Discovery of gold.

THE ADMINISTRATIONS OF TAYLOR, FILLMORE, PIERCE, AND BUCHANAN:—

Presidents Taylor and Fillmore—The Compromise Bill—The election of Pierce—Trouble in Kansas—The "Know-Nothings"—Rise of the Republican Party—Election of Buchanan—Minnesota and Oregon—John Brown's raid—Abraham Lincoln.

Part V.—The Civil War.

CHAPTER XXX.

SECESSION—THE CONFEDERATE STATES—LINCOLN'S INAUGURATION—THE CALL FOR TROOPS—WAR BEGINS.

540. Secession.—Under what is known as the State-Rights doctrine, the South held that a State might, at any time, lawfully secede or withdraw from the Union. As the Southern States claimed to find in the election of Lincoln, who was opposed to the extension of slavery, a reason for leaving the Union, a State convention met in South Carolina, and on December 20, 1860, passed an ordinance of secession, declaring that the State seceded from the Union.

541. Georgia, Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Louisiana, and Texas followed the lead of South Carolina, and by February 1, 1861, the seven "cotton-States" had declared themselves independent and out of the Union.

542. Seizure of national property.—On the evening of December 26, 1860, Major Robert Anderson, who was in command of Fort Moultrie, near Charleston, transferred his men to Fort Sumter, in the harbor, a stronger fortification. Then the authorities of South Carolina seized the United States custom-house and other national property. The "Star of the West," an unarmed steamer, sent by President Buchanan in January, 1861, with re-enforce-

540. What do you understand by *secession?* What reason did the South give for seceding? When did South Carolina secede?—541. What States declared themselves out of the Union?

ments and supplies to Fort Sumter, was fired on and compelled to turn back. General Twiggs, who commanded a United States army of 2,500 men in Texas, turned over his whole force, with all the military stores, to that State.

543. The Confederate States.—On February 4, 1861, a convention of the seceding States met at Montgomery, Alabama, and formed what was styled the Confederate States. A constitution based upon that of the United States was adopted, and Jefferson Davis, late United States Senator from Mississippi, was chosen provisional President and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, provisional Vice-President.

JEFFERSON DAVIS.

544. The border States.—What are called the "border States"—Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, Missouri, and Arkansas—had not yet taken any definite action, but they were in sympathy with their sister slave States. This was the condition of affairs when Buchanan's administration ended.

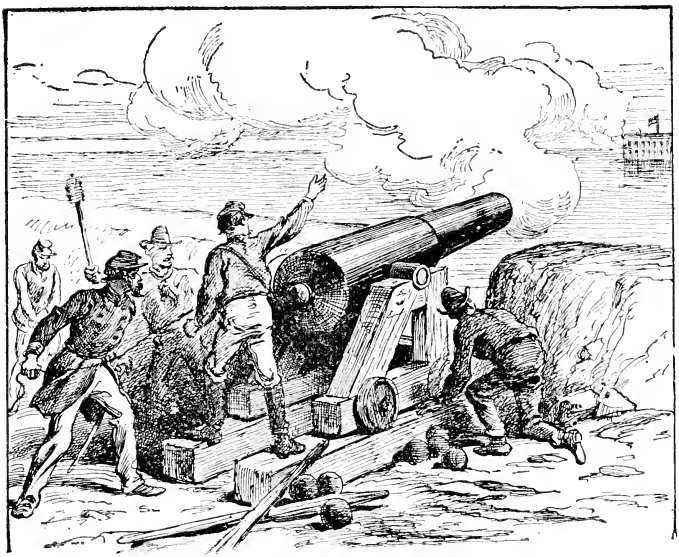
545. Abraham Lincoln inaugurated.—On March 4, 1861, Abraham Lincoln was inaugurated as President of the United States, in the Capitol at Washington, and Hannibal Hamlin as Vice-President.

546. During the time between the election of Lincoln and the close of Buchanan's administration the national government took no action in regard to the seceding States. Buchanan did not believe that the States had a right to

542. To what fort did Major Anderson transfer his men? What did the authorities of South Carolina do? What happened to the "Star of the West"? What did General Twiggs do?—543. What did the seceding States style themselves? Who was chosen President of the Confederate States? Who Vice-President?—544. What States were ready to join the seceding States?

leave the Union, but at the same time he did not believe that he had the right to make them stay in.

547. Lincoln believed very positively that no State could lawfully withdraw from the Union, and declared that while he had neither the right nor the inclination to interfere in any way with Southern institutions he would enforce the laws to the best of his ability and "possess the



FIRING ON FORT SUMTER.

places and property" belonging to the United States, which meant that he would retake the forts, arsenals, and other national property which the seceders had taken.

548. The fall of Fort Sumter.—As a first step, Lincoln sent re-enforcements and supplies to Major Anderson, who still held Fort Sumter, but before they could reach him General Beauregard (*bo're-gard*), who was in command of

546. Was anything done during the time between the election of Lincoln and the close of Buchanan's administration?—547. What did Lincoln believe?

the Confederate forces around Charleston, opened fire on the fort, before daylight of April 12, 1861. The bombardment was maintained for thirty-four hours, and then Anderson, having exhausted his ammunition, and seeing no prospect of relief, surrendered the fort. On Sunday, April 14th, he marched out with his little garrison of eighty-five men and embarked for New York. He carried with him the flag that had been on the fort, and four years later he had the satisfaction of hoisting it over the ruins of Sumter.

549. The call for troops.—The bombardment of Fort Sumter roused the whole North. Political parties were forgotten, and the people were animated by but one feeling: to avenge the insult offered to the flag. President Lincoln, by a proclamation, called for seventy-five thousand volunteers. The border States refused to furnish any troops; Maryland and Delaware hesitated, but the northern States responded with enthusiasm. Davis, as President of the Confederate States, also called for men, and his call met with a generous answer.

550. Secession of Virginia and other States.—Virginia, Arkansas, North Carolina, and Tennessee then seceded and joined the Confederacy. Maryland, though it remained in the Union, showed great hostility to the government. The "Sixth Massachusetts" regiment, while hurrying to the defence of Washington, was attacked by a mob in Baltimore, and several men were killed. In Missouri the governor and legislature favored secession, but Captain Lyon, of the United States army, with volunteers, organized by Colonel Frank P. Blair, captured the camp of the militia called out by the governor.

551. The navy-yard at Norfolk, with 2,000 cannon and great quantities of ammunition and other war materials,

548. Describe the fall of Sumter. What was Anderson compelled to do?—549. What effect had the bombardment of Sumter on the North? For what did Lincoln call? How did the country respond? What did Davis do?—550. What other States seceded? What happened to the "Sixth Massachusetts" in Baltimore? What took place in Missouri?

was seized by Virginia troops. The United States arsenal at Harper's Ferry would, no doubt, have been captured by the Confederates had not its commander burned it.

552. Washington threatened.—Richmond had become the capital of the Southern Confederacy, and a force of nearly a hundred thousand Confederates, extending from Harper's Ferry to Norfolk, occupied Virginia and threatened Washington and the North. The Southern army was under the command of able and experienced officers who had left the United States service.

553. Fortress Monroe, at the mouth of the James River, the only strong position in the South held by the United States, was occupied by a body of twelve thousand troops under General Benjamin F. Butler.

554. The battle of Bull Run.—The veteran General Scott organized the United States forces, occupied Alexandria and Arlington Heights, and prepared to engage the enemy. An army under General Irwin McDowell advanced into Virginia in July, 1861, to attack General Beauregard, the Southern commander, who had moved his troops to Manassas Junction. Another Confederate body, under General Joseph E. Johnston, was held in check near Harper's Ferry by the Union general Patterson.

555. Several unimportant actions had taken place, the Confederates had been successful in an engagement at Big Bethel, while the Union men had gained signal victories at Philippi, Rich Mountain, Carrick's Ford, and Beverly.

556. On July 18th McDowell engaged Beauregard at Centreville, and on Sunday, the 21st, the two armies met at

551. What military stores were seized by the Confederates?—552. What city was chosen as the capital of the Southern Confederacy? Give an account of the Confederate army. By whom was it commanded?—553. What was the only strong position in the South that the North held? Who occupied it?—554. What was done by General Scott? By General McDowell? By General Patterson?—555. Where had several unimportant actions taken place?

Bull Run. The latter was the first great battle of the war. The action was long indecisive, but when it seemed that the Union army must be victorious a large force under General Joseph E. Johnston re-enforced Beauregard, the tide of battle turned, the Union men were routed, and fled, panic-stricken, to the entrenchments before Washington.

557. McClellan in command.—Both sides now realized that a great conflict was upon the country. Congress voted to call for half a million of volunteers and to raise $500,000,000 for carrying on the war. General George B. McClellan, who had been successful in West Virginia, was placed in command of the Army of the Potomac, and in October, when General Scott was forced to retire by his age and infirmities, he became commander-in-chief of all the United States forces.

558. On October 21st, about 2,000 Union men, or Federals, as they were called, under command of Colonel Baker, United States Senator from Oregon, crossed the Potomac at Ball's Bluff. They were attacked and defeated with great loss, Colonel Baker being killed. Two months later, however, in a skirmish at Dranesville, Virginia, the Confederates were routed. With the exception of these two engagements, the Army of the Potomac remained inactive during the remainder of 1861.

559. Missouri.—There was a determined but unsuccessful effort made to carry Missouri into the Confederacy, and many battles were fought on her soil. On July 5, 1861, the Union forces were defeated at Carthage, and in a desperate fight at Wilson's Creek, August 10th, General Lyon was killed and his men forced to retreat. At Lexington Colonel James A. Mulligan, with two thousand of the Chicago Irish Brigade, was compelled to surrender

556. Describe the battle of Bull Run.—557. What did both sides realize? What did Congress do? Who was placed in command of the Army of the Potomac? Who was forced to retire?—558. What two other engagements occurred in 1861?

after a gallant defence, and early in November General Ulysses S. Grant, who was here first brought into notice, made an unsuccessful attack on a Confederate force at Belmont in Missouri.

560. Blockade.—When the war began the United States had a very small navy, but by building, buying, and chartering, she had in a short time between two and three hundred vessels.

561. To prevent the South sending her cotton to Europe and getting war supplies, arms, clothing, etc., in return, President Lincoln declared a blockade of all the Southern ports, and took every means to make it as complete as possible. United States men-of-war cruised along the Southern coast and endeavored to prevent the entrance of any vessels.

562. Naval expeditions were sent out which captured the forts at Hatteras Inlet, in North Carolina, and those in Port Royal Harbor, South Carolina.

563. Mason and Slidell.—Soon after the opening of the war, England and France, who favored the Confederate States, acknowledged them as "belligerents," that is, a nation carrying on war, thus placing them on the same footing as the United States, though not recognizing their independence.

564. In November, 1861, the South, in the hope of obtaining assistance, and perhaps the recognition of her independence, sent James M. Mason and John Slidell to Europe as her commissioners or representatives. They reached Cuba and sailed thence in the British steamer "Trent." The vessel was stopped at sea, however, by Captain Charles Wilkes, of the United States frigate "San Jacinto," and the commissioners were taken prisoners. England at once demanded that they should be given up,

559. Give an account of affairs in Missouri.—560. What was the condition of the navy?—561. Why was a blockade declared? What means were taken to make it complete?—562. What naval expeditions were sent out?—563. What did England and France do?

and as the Federal government disavowed Captain Wilkes' act, the men were set at liberty.

565. Shortly before this the Federal government thought it advisable to send unofficial agents to England and France to plead the cause of the Union. Thurlow Weed, an experienced statesman, and Archbishop Hughes, of New York, were selected, and they performed their mission well.

Topics for Review:—

Secession—The Confederate States—Inauguration of Lincoln—Fall of Sumter—The call for troops—The battle of Bull Run—Blockade—Mason and Slidell.

CHAPTER XXXI.

THE WAR IN THE WEST—CAPTURE OF NEW ORLEANS—THE MONITOR AND THE MERRIMAC.

566. In the West.—The Confederate line in the West extended from Belmont, Missouri, to Cumberland Gap, Kentucky. In January, 1862, General George H. Thomas, commanding a part of General Buell's army, defeated the Confederates at Mill Spring, Kentucky, and drove them across the Cumberland River. The following month Commodore Foote with a fleet of gunboats reduced the Confederate Fort Henry, on the Tennessee, after an hour's bombardment.

567. General Grant, supported by Foote's fleet, then attacked Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland River, and after three days' desperate fighting captured it, February 16, 1862, with about fifteen thousand men. When General Buckner, who was in command of the fort, asked what terms would be granted him if he surrendered, Grant replied: "No terms except an unconditional and immediate

564. Why were Mason and Slidell sent to Europe? What happened to them? Why were they set free?—565. Who were sent to Europe to plead the cause of the Union?—566. How far did the Confederate lines in the West extend? What did General Thomas do? What Commodore Foote?

surrender can be accepted." From this Grant is often spoken of as "Unconditional Surrender Grant."

568. These victories broke the Southern line of defence, and the Confederates were obliged to abandon Kentucky altogether and a large part of Tennessee. They then fell back to Corinth, Mississippi.

569. The battle of Pittsburg Landing.—Grant followed the retreating Confederates and moved up the Tennessee River to Pittsburg Landing or Shiloh. Here he was attacked suddenly, on Sunday, April 6, 1862, by General Albert Sidney Johnston, and driven back. Victory seemed within the grasp of the Confederates, but their leader, Johnston, was killed, and Buell came up with heavy reenforcements.

570. The following day Grant and Buell attacked the Confederates and drove them back on Corinth. When the Union army had recovered somewhat General Halleck, who had come into command, marched on Corinth, which was evacuated by the Confederates on May 30th.

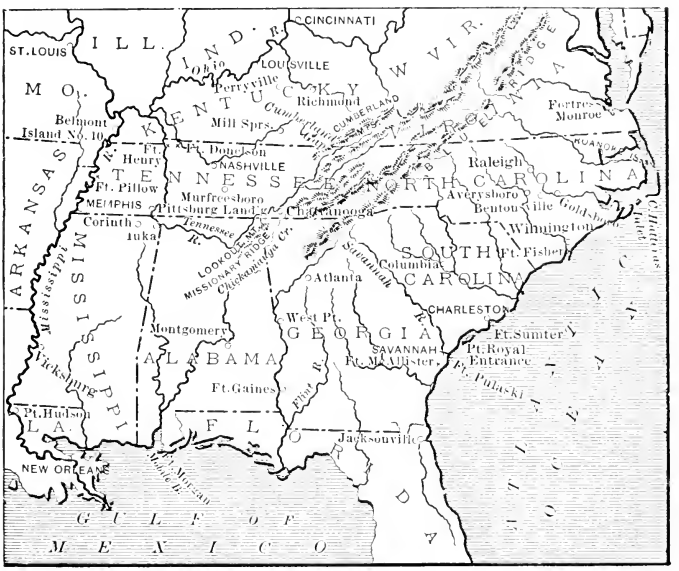
571. Island Number Ten.—The Mississippi open.—On April 7th Island Number Ten, a Southern stronghold which blocked the Mississippi, surrendered to Commodore Foote and General Pope, after a bombardment of three weeks. Then Fort Pillow was taken, June 4th, and the city of Memphis fell two days later; thus the Mississippi was open to the Union vessels as far south as Vicksburg.

572. Kentucky invaded.—After the capture of Corinth by the Union forces the Confederate general Braxton Bragg with thirty-five thousand men seized Chattanooga, in Tennessee. Buell was sent to dislodge him, and Bragg

567. Give an account of Grant's attack on Fort Donelson. From what fact is Grant often called "Unconditional Surrender Grant?"—568. What was the effect of these victories?—569. What was Grant's next move? By whom was he attacked? What was the result of the battle?—570. Who was in command of the Union army at this time? What did he do?—571. What Southern stronghold blocked the Mississippi? To whom did it surrender? What two other points were taken? What was the consequence of these Union victories?

pushed north, hoping to reach Louisville. Buell, however, reached that city first. At the same time General Kirby Smith invaded Kentucky, defeated a Union force at Richmond, in that State, and threatened Cincinnati.

573. The two Southern armies remained in Kentucky during the month of September, and endeavored to cause



MAP OF THE SEAT OF WAR IN THE WEST AND SOUTH.

a general rising of the people in their favor. Failing in this, they retreated toward Chattanooga. Buell followed and defeated them in an action at Perryville, October 8th, but Bragg escaped to Chattanooga.

574. The battle of Murfreesboro.—General William S. Rosecrans, who was in command at Corinth, having distin-

572. When and by whom was Chattanooga taken? What city did Bragg try to reach? Who reached there first? What did General Kirby Smith do?—573. What did the Southerners try to do in Kentucky? Failing in this, what did they do? What was the result of the action at Perryville?

guished himself by defeating the Confederates at Iuka, September 19th, and repelling an attack on Corinth, October 4th, was now given command of the Army of the Cumberland, in place of Buell. On December 31, 1862, Rosecrans met the Confederates in a desperate engagement at Murfreesboro, Tennessee, or Stone River, as it is sometimes called. The battle raged for three days, and the loss was frightful on both sides, but at the end the Union army was in possession of the field.

ADMIRAL FARRAGUT.

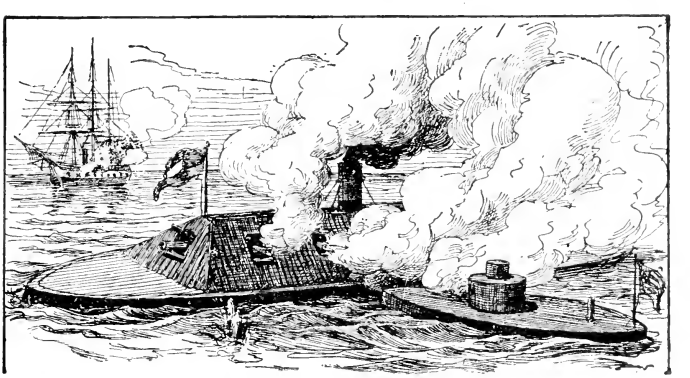
575. Capture of New Orleans.—Early in April, 1862, a powerful fleet under Captain (afterward Admiral) David G. Farragut, aided by an army commanded by General Benjamin F. Butler, sailed from Fortress Monroe to attack New Orleans, the richest and most important city of the Confederacy. Seventy miles below the city were two strong forts; besides, a heavy chain cable was stretched from bank to bank of the Mississippi, and iron-clad rams, fire-rafts, and numerous gunboats were used as a further means of defence. After bombarding the forts for six days Farragut succeeded in running his ships past them, having cut through the chains, and captured the city. General Butler then took possession on April 25, 1862. The line of the Mississippi River was thus almost entirely secured, and the power of the Confederates in the West hopelessly shattered.

576. The Monitor and the Merrimac.—There were several important military and naval expeditions on the Atlantic coast during 1862. Roanoke Island and several

574. Who was placed in command of the Army of the Cumberland? Describe the battle of Murfreesboro.—575. Who was sent to attack New Orleans? How was it defended? Give an account of its capture.

other points in North Carolina were captured, and, besides, Fort Pulaski at the mouth of the Savannah River was taken, as well as some posts in Florida.

577. On March 8, 1862, the United States sloop-of-war "Cumberland" and the frigate "Congress," which were lying near the mouth of the James River off Fortress Monroe, were attacked by the Confederate iron-clad war vessel "Merrimac," which steamed out from Norfolk. Their spirited resistance was useless, their broadsides were powerless. With a blow from the iron ram which projected



THE MONITOR AND THE MERRIMAC.

from her prow the "Merrimac" sunk the "Cumberland" and all on board. The "Congress" was run ashore, but the "Merrimac" poured into her such a storm of shot and shell that she was forced to surrender.

578. The following day, Sunday, the "Merrimac" again came out, intending to destroy the rest of the fleet. But this time she was to meet something more than a wooden ship. The "Monitor," an iron vessel of entirely new design, invented by Captain John Ericsson, arrived at midnight from New York. She was a flat vessel, her deck almost

576. What points were captured in the early part of 1862?—577. What Union war vessels did the "Merrimac" attack in March, 1862?—What was the result?

even with the surface of the water, and with a revolving turret which carried two powerful guns. She at once attacked the "Merrimac," and after a naval battle the like of which the world had never seen, forced the Confederate boat to withdraw to Norfolk.

579. Captain John Ericsson, to whose inventive genius the country is so deeply indebted, was born in the province of Vermeland, Sweden, in 1803. He served for some years as an officer of engineers in the Swedish army, and in 1826 removed to England, where he devoted his time to improvements in steam machinery. In 1839 he came to this country, and two years later he built the war steamer "Princeton" for the Government, which was the first "propeller" steamer ever constructed. He also invented a *caloric* or hot-air engine, but he will be best known to after ages as the inventor of the "Monitor." Captain Ericsson died March 8, 1889.

Topics for Review:—

The battle of Pittsburg Landing—Island Number Ten—Capture of New Orleans—The Monitor and the Merrimac—Captain Ericsson.

CHAPTER XXXII.

THE ARMY OF THE POTOMAC—THE EMANCIPATION PROCLAMATION—GETTYSBURG.

580. McClellan's campaign.—In March, 1862, General McClellan with the Army of the Potomac prepared to move upon Richmond. Leaving a well-organized force to defend Washington, and sending an army under General Banks to operate in the Shenandoah Valley, he embarked with a large body of troops for Fortress Monroe. From this point he attempted to march on Richmond, but the Confederates contested every step. A month was spent

578. What took place the day following the "Merrimac's" victory? What was the "Monitor"? What was the result of the "Monitor's" attack?—579. Who invented the "Monitor"? What do you know of Captain Ericsson?

in besieging Yorktown, which the opposing army evacuated May 4th, and the following day the Union troops gained a victory at Williamsburg, but the Confederates succeeded in retreating.

581. The battle of Fair Oaks.—McClellan now advanced to the Chickahominy, and part of his army had crossed, when he was suddenly attacked at Fair Oaks, May 31, 1862, by the Confederates under General Joseph E. Johnston. The fight lasted the whole day, but was not decisive. The next day it was renewed, but Johnston being severely wounded, the Confederates withdrew. General Robert E. Lee now took command of the Southern army in Virginia.

GENL. ROBT. E. LEE.

582. McClellan moves to the James River. — McClellan depended on General Banks to hold the Confederates under General Thomas J. Jackson, called "Stonewall Jackson," in the Shenandoah Valley, but that dashing leader drove Banks back, and then by a rapid movement joined Lee. McDowell's army was to have united with McClellan, but it was detained at Washington to protect the city from an anticipated attack. As this expected support failed him, McClellan was obliged to change his base, and moved toward the James River.

583. The seven days' battles.—On June 25th Lee made a furious attack on McClellan at Mechanicsville. The fight was continued for a week with varying success, but Lee

580. What were McClellan's plans for his campaign? On what city did he march? What was the result of the victory of May 5, 1862? —581. What battle occurred May 31st? What was the result? Who took command of the Southern army in Virginia?—582. What was McClellan's next move? What happened to Banks? Why was McClellan obliged to change his base?

was finally repulsed, July 1st, at the battle of Malvern Hill. In these seven days' battles Lee lost twenty thousand men, and McClellan nearly as many. The Union army now withdrew to Harrison's Landing, on the James River.

584. Lee invades Maryland. — The armies of Banks, McDowell, and Fremont had been united under the name of the Army of Virginia and placed under the command of General Pope. McClellan expected Pope to aid him in taking Richmond, but Lee, seeing his opportunity, suddenly marched northward.

585. When this became known McClellan was ordered to embark his army for Washington, which relieved Lee of all anxiety. He attacked and defeated Pope at Cedar Mountain, August 9th, and on the 23d completely routed him in the Second Battle of Bull Run. Pope then fell back to Washington with his disorganized men, and Lee pushed on into Maryland.

586. The battles of South Mountain and Antietam. — Pope's army was now united to the Army of the Potomac, and the whole placed under McClellan. He reorganized the forces, and then started in pursuit of Lee. The two armies met at South Mountain, September 4th, and after a vigorous fight Lee was defeated. In the meanwhile Stonewall Jackson captured Harper's Ferry, with a quantity of arms and twelve thousand prisoners.

587. On September 17th McClellan again met Lee in the great battle of Antietam (*an-tee'tam*). This was one of the bloodiest contests of the war. It raged all day, and both sides lost heavily. The Union army held its ground, however, and when night came Lee began a retreat to Virginia, and took up a position at Fredericksburg.

583 What was the result of the seven days' battles?—584. Who was placed in command of the army of Virginia? What move did Lee make? —585 What orders did McClellan receive? What was Lee's next move What was the result of the second battle of Bull Run?—586. What did McClellan do? Where did the two armies meet? What capture did Stonewall Jackson make?—587. Give an account of the battle of Antietam.

588. The battle of Fredericksburg.—McClellan did not move rapidly enough, and he was again relieved of the command of the army, and General Ambrose E. Burnside was appointed in his place. Burnside at once set out for Richmond, but encountered Lee at Fredericksburg, Virginia, on December 12th, and there followed a most disastrous battle for the Union forces. Burnside was defeated with a loss of about eleven thousand men, and was forced to retreat toward Washington.

589. In this action the Irish Brigade under General Thomas Francis Meagher especially distinguished itself, fighting against the most desperate odds. An evidence of its valor is the fact that out of twelve hundred men only three hundred survived the fight.

590. The Emancipation Proclamation.—At the beginning of the war President Lincoln declared that he did not intend to interfere with the institution of slavery. General Butler, it is true, at Fortress Monroe confiscated as "contraband of war" some slaves who were to be used against the Union. Though this passed unnoticed, the President disapproved of the action of some other generals, who undertook to free the slaves of those who were in arms against the United States. Now, however, as a war measure, President Lincoln resolved to free the slaves. Accordingly, after due warning he issued a proclamation on January 1, 1863, freeing all slaves in the States at war against the Union. Here are the concluding words of this proclamation: "By virtue of the power, and for the purpose aforesaid, I do order and declare that all persons held as slaves within said designated States and parts of States are and henceforward shall be free. And upon this act, sincerely believed to be an act of justice, warranted by the Constitution upon military necessity, I in-

588. Who superseded McClellan? What terrible battle was fought December 12th, and with what result?—589. What brigade distinguished itself at Fredericksburg?

voke the considerate judgment of mankind and the gracious favor of Almighty God."

591. The battle of Chancellorsville.—At his own request General Burnside was relieved of his command, and it was given to General Joseph Hooker—"Fighting Joe Hooker," as he was called. The Army of the Potomac was now reorganized and recruited, and Hooker crossed the Rappahannock, intending to march on to Richmond. The opposing armies met at Chancellorsville; there a battle occurred, May 2, 1863, which lasted two days. Although Hooker had an army double the size of the Confederates, he was defeated with a loss of about 17,000, killed and wounded, and forced to recross the Rappahannock.

592. In this engagement "Stonewall" Jackson was accidentally shot by his own men, and died from the effects of the wound May 10th.

593. Gettysburg.—Flushed with success, Lee determined to invade the North again. He moved forward into Pennsylvania, intending to attack Harrisburg, the capital of the State, and, if successful there, to push on to Philadelphia.

594. General George G. Meade, who two days before had succeeded Hooker in command of the army, met the Confederates on July 1, 1863, at Gettysburg, in Pennsylvania. The Union army was the stronger and had the advantage of position, being posted on a hillside near the town. Now followed one of the most stubbornly fought battles of the war: it continued for three days. Finally, in the afternoon of July 3d, General Pickett, with about fifteen thousand veterans, the pick of the Southern army, made a desperate charge to break the Union line. The fighting was fierce for a time, and every inch of ground was hotly

590. To what war measure did President Lincoln now resort?—591. Who succeeded Burnside in command of the army? Give an account of the battle of Chancellorsville. — 592. What Southern general was mortally wounded?—593. What did Lee determine to do?

contested, but at last Meade succeeded in repelling the assailants, and the Union troops were victorious.

595. Lee retreated through the Shenandoah Valley to the Rapidan, and the North was safe from further invasion. The Confederate loss in killed, wounded, and missing was about 25,000, and the Union loss about 2,000 less. The field of Gettysburg was afterward consecrated as a national cemetery.

Topics for Review:—

McClellan's campaign—The seven days' battle—Lee invades Maryland—Antietam—Fredericksburg—The Emancipation Proclamation—Chancellorsville—Gettysburg.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

ON THE MISSISSIPPI—THE DRAFT RIOTS—"ABOVE THE CLOUDS"—CAPTURE OF ATLANTA—THE MARCH TO THE SEA.

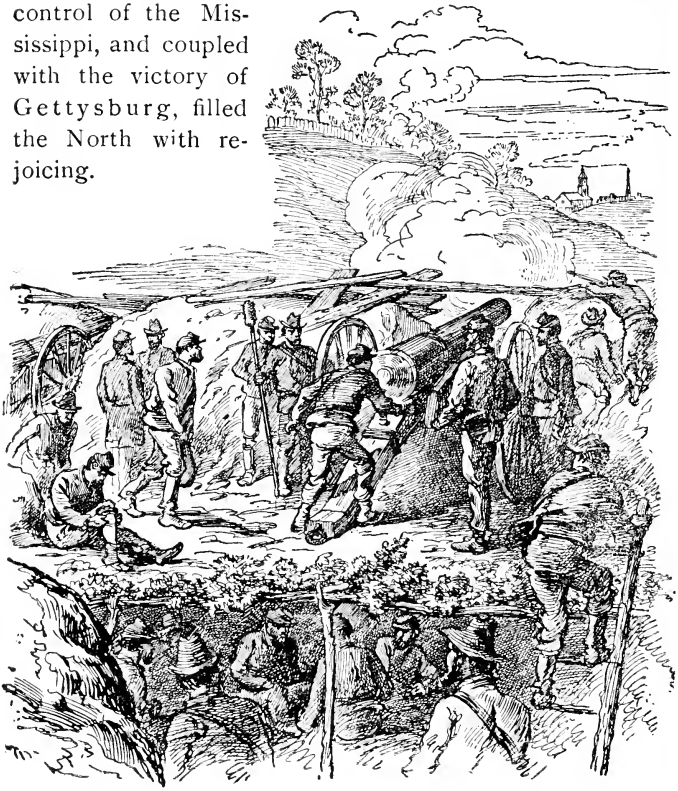
596. Vicksburg and Port Hudson.—The Confederate armies still held Vicksburg and Port Hudson on the Mississippi. Grant, however, after many maneuvres succeeded in crossing the Mississippi by means of gunboats, and getting in the rear of Vicksburg laid siege to it. Repeated attempts to take it by storm were bravely repulsed by the Confederates under General Pemberton. At last food became so scarce that his army was reduced to one cracker and a small piece of pork a day for each man, and worn out by forty-seven days of continual labor, Pemberton with his garrison of thirty-two thousand men surrendered to Grant on July 4th, the day after the battle of Gettysburg.

597. In the meanwhile General Banks was besieging

594. Who was now in command of the Union army? What famous battle took place? Describe it.—595. What did Lee do after the battle? What was the loss on both sides? To what purpose was the field of Gettysburg afterward consecrated?—596. How was the war progressing in the West? Describe the capture of Vicksburg.

Port Hudson. Five days later, on learning of the fall of Vicksburg, Port Hudson also surrendered.

598. These victories gave the Union forces complete control of the Mississippi, and coupled with the victory of Gettysburg, filled the North with rejoicing.



SIEGE OF VICKSBURG.

599. The draft riots in New York.—At the beginning of the war the call for troops met with a prompt answer from the people, but after the country had seen two years of war volunteers were more slow in coming forward. President Lincoln, therefore, ordered a draft in July, 1863.

597. When did Port Hudson surrender?—598 What did President Lincoln do in July, 1863?

By this draft able-bodied men between twenty and forty-five years were enrolled, and those drawn by lot were compelled to serve in the army or send a substitute.

600. This seemed hard on the poor, who could not afford to engage a substitute and might often be obliged to leave their families in want. Evil-disposed persons took advantage of this to stir up a riot. For a few days New York was in the hands of a mob, and the result was great loss of life and much destruction of property.

601. The battle of Chickamauga.—After his victory at Murfreesboro General Rosecrans succeeded in driving Bragg out of Chattanooga, in southern Tennessee. On September 19th and 20th, 1863, however, Bragg, greatly re-enforced, attacked the Union army at Chickamauga, just over the Georgia line, and drove it back with heavy loss to Chattanooga. But for the splendid fighting of General Thomas, who held his position as firmly as a rock, Rosecrans would have been routed.

602. The battle of Lookout Mountain.—For two months Bragg kept Rosecrans shut up in Chattanooga. Then Grant was placed in command of all the armies of the West and went to Chattanooga with Thomas, who had superseded Rosecrans, to aid him; Sherman arrived there with some troops from Vicksburg, and Hooker brought others from Virginia.

603. In a battle which lasted three days Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge, which overlooked Chattanooga, were attacked and carried, and Bragg retreated into Georgia. During the fight at Lookout Mountain the combatants at times were hidden by the mists of the mountain; hence it is often spoken of as "the battle above the clouds."

599. What was the effect of this draft?—600. How did it affect the poor? What happened in New York?—601. What battle occurred in southern Tennessee? Who saved the Union forces? -602. Who was placed in command of all the armies of the West? By whom was he joined?—603. Give an account of the battle of Lookout Mountain. What is it sometimes called?

604. The "Alabama" and the "Kearsarge."—The blockade of the Southern ports prevented the Confederates from fitting out war vessels. England, however, permitted vessels to be built there, which caused great damage to the commerce of the United States. A vessel bearing the United States flag was hardly safe at sea, and England thus secured most of our trade in carrying merchandise.

605. The "Alabama," a Confederate cruiser built and fitted out in England, captured and burned a number of American ships. Finally, however, she was attacked off the coast of France by the United States man-of-war "Kearsarge" (*keer'särj*), and sunk June 19, 1864.

606. Farragut enters Mobile Bay.—On August 5, 1864, Farragut, who was now Admiral, the highest rank in the United States Navy, forced his way into Mobile Bay, gallantly passing Forts Morgan and Gaines. He then attacked and destroyed the Confederate fleet, including the ram "Tennessee," and reduced the forts. The port of Mobile was thus closed to all supplies coming from abroad, though the city did not surrender till the spring of 1865.

607. Grant made commander-in-chief.—On March 3, 1864, Ulysses S. Grant was made Lieutenant-General and commander-in-chief of all the armies. He at once proceeded to Virginia to take charge in person of the Army of the Potomac and to confront Lee. General Sherman was left in command of the Western Army.

608. Sherman captures Atlanta.—Following out a plan agreed upon with Grant, Sherman began his advance from Chattanooga to Atlanta, on May 6, 1864. It was a rough, mountainous country, and the march was interrupted by several battles, but the army moved surely, if slowly, on.

604. What caused great damage to our commerce? How did England profit by this?—605. What was done by the "Alabama"? By what vessel was she defeated?—606. Whither did Admiral Farragut proceed August 5, 1864? Describe the battle of Mobile Bay. What was the result?—607. What position did Grant receive? Where did he go?—608. What was begun by General Sherman? What can you say of the march?

609. General Joseph E. Johnston, who was in command at Atlanta, not giving satisfaction to the Confederate authorities, was removed, and General J. B. Hood took his place. A series of battles followed, in which Hood lost heavily. Finally, Sherman succeeded in getting part of his army between Hood and Atlanta; the Confederates were obliged to abandon the city, and Sherman occupied it September 2d.

GEN. W. T. SHERMAN.

610. Thomas defeats Hood.—Hood then moved into Tennessee, hoping to capture Nashville, which was held by Thomas. The Confederates laid siege to the city, but on December 15th they were suddenly attacked by Thomas, and in an engagement which lasted two days were so badly beaten that their army was completely broken up and the war in Tennessee was at an end.

611. The march to the sea.—As Atlanta was the great supply depot from which the South drew most of her war material, Sherman burned the machine shops, foundries, factories, and mills of the city. Then, having cut off telegraph and railroad communications with the North, he began his "march to the sea."

612. He started November 14th, and so well were his plans concealed that the country was in profound ignorance of his movements. For four weeks nothing was heard of him, and the North began to fear that disaster had overtaken him.

609. By whom was General Johnston superseded in command at Atlanta? Give an account of the capture of that city.—610. What ended the war in Tennessee?—611. What did Sherman do in Atlanta?

613. In the meanwhile, with his army of sixty thousand veterans, spread over a breadth of sixty miles, Sherman moved steadily on, leaving desolation in his track. He captured all the cotton and stores found on his line of march, destroyed the railroads, and devoured everything in the way of food. Thousands of fugitive slaves followed him.

614. There was no army to oppose him, and in a little less than a month Sherman reached Fort McAllister, near Savannah. This he carried by assault December 13th. Nine days later he sent a message to President Lincoln offering him as a Christmas gift the city of Savannah with a hundred and fifty heavy guns, plenty of ammunition, and about twenty-five thousand bales of cotton.

Topics for Review:—

Vicksburg—The draft riots—The "Alabama" and the "Kearsarge"—Farragut in Mobile Bay—Grant commander-in-chief—Sherman captures Atlanta—The march to the sea.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

GRANT'S CAMPAIGN—SURRENDER OF LEE—ASSASSINATION OF LINCOLN.

615. Grant's campaign.—On May 4, 1864, Grant crossed the Rapidan and started on his march to Richmond. A series of battles at once began, May 5th, with a three days' fight in "the Wilderness," a region of brush and stunted trees, followed by a battle at Spottsylvania Court House, May 8th–18th, then by another at Cold Harbor, June 3d, and Lee was finally driven back to within a few miles of Richmond.

616. These battles cost many thousands of lives, but Grant was confident of ultimate success, and would not turn back, vowing his determination to "fight it out on that line if it took all summer."

612–614. What can you say of Sherman's march to the sea?—615. Give an account of the battles of the "Wilderness," of Spottsylvania Court House, of Cold Harbor.

617. He next pushed across the James River, and attacked the Confederate works at Petersburg, June 18th, but being repulsed, he settled down for a long siege.

618. It is estimated that the Union loss during the six months from May to the end of October amounted to

MAP OF THE WAR IN VIRGINIA.

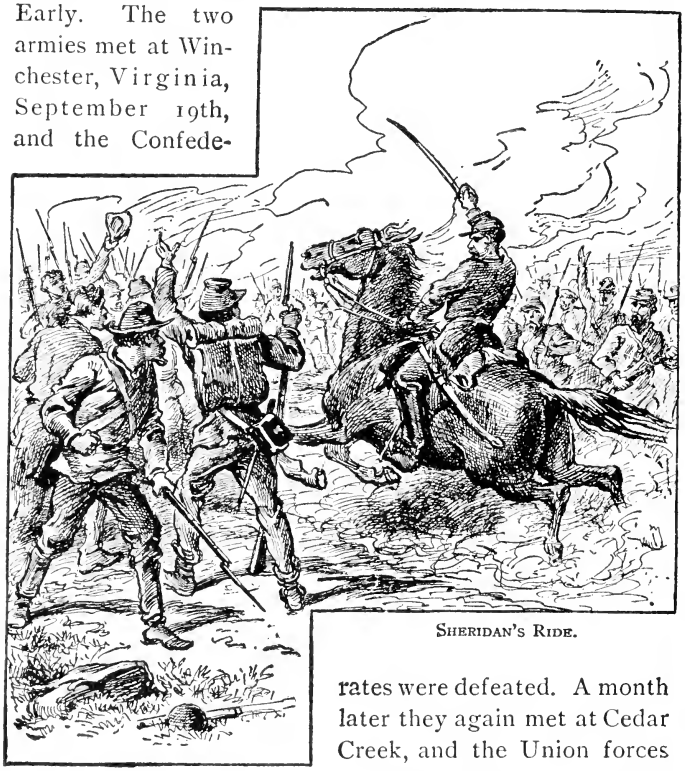
100,000 men, while that of the Confederates was about 40,000.

619. In the Shenandoah Valley.—The Confederates endeavored to divert Grant by operations in the Shenandoah Valley. The Union troops were forced back, and General

617. What was Grant's next move?—618. What is the estimated loss of the two armies from May to October, 1864?

Jubal Early, an experienced Confederate officer, advanced to attack Washington. He was repulsed, however, and retired to Virginia; on his way back he burned the town of Chambersburg, Pennsylvania, July 30th.

620. General Philip H. Sheridan was then sent after Early. The two armies met at Winchester, Virginia, September 19th, and the Confederates were defeated. A month later they again met at Cedar Creek, and the Union forces were completely routed and fled panic-stricken. Sheridan was absent at the time, being at Winchester, but hearing the boom of cannon he sprung to his horse, and by a remarkable ride reached his command in time to turn them back. Inspired by the energy and presence of their leader



SHERIDAN'S RIDE.

619. Describe the operations of Early.

the men gained courage, and drove Early from the field, capturing a number of his guns and taking many prisoners.

621. President Lincoln re-elected.—In the fall of 1864 Abraham Lincoln was re-elected President and Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, was elected Vice-President. The Democratic candidate was General George B. McClellan.

622. Capture of Fort Fisher.—Toward the close of December, 1864, General Butler with a land force and Admiral Porter with a fleet assaulted and bombarded Fort Fisher, which guarded Wilmington, North Carolina, but the attack was a failure. Butler returned to Fortress Monroe, but the following month Porter with the help of fresh troops under General Terry captured the fort, January 15, 1865.

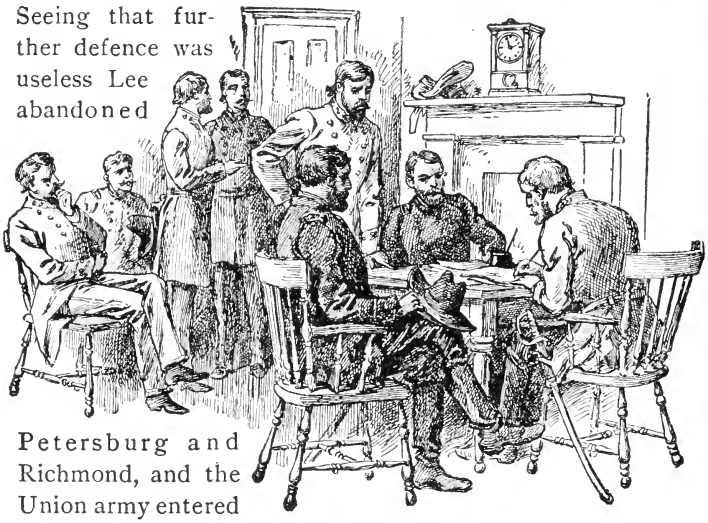
623. Sherman's march north.—The great operations of the war were now centering around Richmond, where Grant held Lee. Sheridan controlled the Shenandoah Valley, and on February 1, 1865, Sherman began to move northward from Savannah.

624. Columbia, the capital of South Carolina, was taken, and during its occupation was burned. The capture of this place compelled the Confederates, who were still in possession of Charleston, to evacuate that city, and on February 18, 1865, the Union forces entered the city, and the flag of the United States again floated over Fort Sumter.

625. General Joseph E. Johnston attempted to check Sherman's march, and battles were fought at Averysboro and at Bentonville, North Carolina. In both of these the Confederates were defeated. Johnston retreated to Raleigh, and Sherman pushed on, and entered Goldsboro, where he was joined by Generals Schofield and Terry with their commands.

620. Who was sent after Early? With what result? What is known as Sheridan's ride?—621. Who was successful in the election of 1864?—622. When and by whom was Fort Fisher captured?—623. When did Sherman begin his march northward?—624. What happened at Columbia? At Charleston?—625. Describe Sherman's movements.

626. The surrender of Lee.—Lee was cut off from supplies, his army was dwindling and was half starved, so he began to look about for a way to retreat. But it was too late. The railroads on which he depended had been destroyed by Sheridan. A force under Sheridan and Warren attacked Lee at Five Forks and defeated him, April 2d. The following day the Union forces made a general assault on the whole line of works in front of Petersburg. Seeing that further defence was useless Lee abandoned Petersburg and Richmond, and the Union army entered the Confederate capital April 3, 1865, and raised the old flag over the city. The Confederates attempted to reach Lynchburg, but were again prevented by Sheridan. Lee was now powerless, and wishing "to avoid further effusion of blood," as he wrote to General Grant, he surrendered with his whole army, on April 9, 1865, at Appomatox Court House, Virginia.



GRANT AND LEE SIGNING THE CONDITIONS OF SURRENDER.

626. What was the condition of Lee's army? By whom was he attacked on April 2, 1865? What was done the following day? With what result? When and where did Lee surrender?

627. Grant treated the Confederates most generously, demanding only their promise to lay down their arms and return to their homes. He also showed his humanity by serving out twenty-five thousand rations of food to the famished men.

628. Surrender of Johnston.—No Confederate army of any size now remained except Johnston's, at Raleigh. Left alone, that general could do nothing, and on April 26th, he and his men laid down their arms. The smaller bodies of Confederates through the country also surrendered in a very short time. The same terms were given to them as to Lee; and the great Civil War, which had lasted four years, was at an end.

629. What the war cost the country in money and men cannot be estimated, but, probably, not less than 500,000 lives and thousands of millions of dollars. The North, with its vast resources, was able to bear this, but the South was reduced to great poverty.

630. Flight of Davis and his cabinet.—After the surrender of Lee the Confederate government broke up. Jefferson Davis, his cabinet, and other officers took to flight, but Davis was captured and imprisoned in Fortress Monroe. After a time he was released, and was never brought to trial.

631. Assassination of President Lincoln.—In the midst of the universal joy that the war was ended a terrible tragedy occurred, which cast a gloom over the whole country. President Lincoln was shot on the night of April 14, 1865, by John Wilkes Booth, a half-crazed sympathizer with the South. The President died the following morning.

632. The memory of Abraham Lincoln is one of the treasures of the country and will ever be held dear by all

627. How did Grant treat the Confederates?—628. What took place at Raleigh? By what was this followed?—629. What was the cost of the war?—630. What can you say of Jefferson Davis?—631. What great calamity occurred April 14, 1865?

Americans. Whatever the political feeling may have been at the time of his first election, there is now but one opinion regarding "Honest Abe," as he was popularly called. The whole country, nay, the whole world, now recognizes him as a conscientious, justice-loving man; a statesman of wonderful discernment, a President above prejudice, and a true, pure-minded patriot.

633. On the night of the President's assassination William H. Seward, Secretary of State, then sick in bed, was also attacked and badly wounded by another conspirator.

634. Booth was pursued, and was killed while resisting capture; others accused of being his accomplices were arrested and tried; four of them were hanged, three were imprisoned for life, and one was sent to prison for six years.

635. On June 19, 1863, the western portion of Virginia, which remained faithful to the Union during the war, was admitted as a separate State under the name of West Virginia. On October 31, 1864, Nevada also came in as a State.

636. Many predicted that the disbanding of hundreds of thousands of men by the close of the war would be followed by many acts of great lawlessness. But to the everlasting credit of the American people such was not the case. The men who for four years had lived under military discipline when freed from restraint quietly laid down their arms, returned to their homes, and went back to their occupation.

632. What can you say of Abraham Lincoln?—633. Who else was attacked on the night of the President's assassination?—634. What happened to Booth and his accomplices?—635. When were West Virginia and Nevada admitted as States?—636. What was predicted for the close of the war? What actually happened?

REVIEW V.--THE CIVIL WAR.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF LINCOLN:—

Secession—Inauguration of Lincoln—Fall of Sumter—The call for troops—The battle of Bull Run—McClellan in command—Missouri—Blockade—Mason and Slidell.

In the West—Pittsburg Landing—Island Number Ten—Kentucky invaded—Murfreesboro—Capture of New Orleans—"The Monitor" and the "Merrimac."

McClellan's campaign—Fair Oaks—The seven days' battles—Lee invades Maryland—Antietam—Fredericksburg—The Emancipation Proclamation—Chancellorsville—Gettysburg.

On the Mississippi—Vicksburg and Port Hudson—The draft riots—Lookout Mountain—The "Alabama" and the "Kearsarge"—Farragut in Mobile Bay—Grant commander-in-chief—Capture of Atlanta—The march to the sea.

Grant's Campaign—In the Shenandoah Valley—Re-election of Lincoln—Sherman's march to the North—Surrender of Lee—Surrender of Johnston—Assassination of President Lincoln.

Part VI.—Reconstruction.

CHAPTER XXXV.

The Administration of Johnson and of Grant.

637. Andrew Johnson, seventeenth President. — On the death of Abraham Lincoln, April 15, 1865, Vice-President Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, under the provisions of the Constitution, became President of the United States.

Andrew Johnson.

638. The Amnesty Proclamation.—The first act of the new President was to issue, May 29, 1865, a Proclamation of Amnesty, or general pardon for the offences committed during the war, to former Confederates, except a few. This amnesty was gradually extended, until on Christmas day, 1868, it was made to include all, without exception.

639. The Thirteenth Amendment, abolishing slavery.—The proclamation of President Lincoln had declared free all negroes held as slaves in States then in rebellion. This was strengthened, December 18, 1865, by the passage of the Thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution, whereby slavery was forever abolished in the United States.

637. Who succeeded President Lincoln?—638. What was his first act? What is the Amnesty Proclamation? When was it made general?—639. What was the purpose of the Thirteenth Amendment?

640. Reconstruction.—The question now arose whether the States that had attempted to secede had forfeited their State rights. The President claimed they had not, as they had never been out of the Union. Congress declared they had, and must be treated as territories.

641. This led to a disagreement, which grew more bitter every day, and a number of bills were passed after the President had vetoed or refused his assent to them.

642. These bills all related to the "freedmen," as the blacks who had been slaves were called. The first, known as the Freedmen's Bureau Bill, provided for the care and protection of the freedmen. The second, or Civil Rights Bill, gave the negroes the rights of citizenship, and required that certain other conditions embodied in the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution should be complied with. The third, or Tenure-of-Office Bill, prohibited the President from removing any person from civil office without the consent of the Senate.

643. The national debt.—The debt incurred by the war was more than twenty-seven hundred millions of dollars, independent of the State debts, which would probably swell it to four thousand millions. The government at once set about reducing this, and within two years after the close of the war, before all the troops had been discharged, this debt had been diminished $71,000,000, and by imposing a tax on incomes, manufactures, etc., and by duties on imported articles, the government has succeeded in paying off a great part of this vast debt.

644. Impeachment of the President.—During the year 1867 President Johnson attempted to remove Stanton, the Secretary of War, from his Cabinet. Heretofore every President had had the right to remove any of his Cabinet

640. What question now arose? How did the President and Congress feel on the subject?—641. What was the result of this disagreement?—642. To what did these bills relate?—643. What was the debt incurred by the war? What did the government do to reduce it?

officers, but now Congress claimed it was a violation of the Tenure-of-Office Act, and on February 24, 1868, the President was impeached, that is, was called to appear for trial before the Senate on a charge that he was unfit for his office and should be removed. The trial began March 30th, and lasted till May. Nineteen Senators voted "not guilty" and thirty-five "guilty," and as the latter vote was one less than the two-thirds required for conviction Johnson remained President to the end of his term.

645. Nebraska and Alaska.—During the year 1867 Nebraska was admitted into the Union as a State. In the same year the United States purchased from Russia for $7,200,000 Alaska, a large territory in the northwest part of America.

646. On June 24, 1868, Arkansas, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, and North and South Carolina were readmitted to the Union under the Reconstruction Act of March 2, 1867. Tennessee had been readmitted two years before. During 1870 Mississippi, the last of the Confederate States, complied with the conditions required by Congress, and came back to the Union.

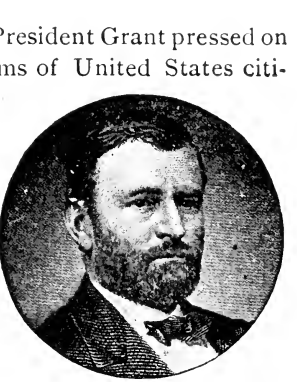
647. The Presidential election.—When the time came for the Presidential election of 1868 the Republicans nominated General Ulysses S. Grant, of Illinois, for President and Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, for Vice-President. The Democratic candidates were Horatio Seymour, of New York, and Francis P. Blair, Jr., of Missouri. The Republican ticket was elected.

648. Ulysses S. Grant, eighteenth President.—Ulysses S. Grant was inaugurated as President March 4, 1869, and Schuyler Colfax as Vice-President.

644. Why was President Johnson impeached? What is meant by the impeachment of the President? When was President Johnson tried? What was the result of his trial?—645. What new State was added in 1867? What is said of Alaska?—646. What States came in under the Reconstruction Act?—647. Who were the candidates for President in 1868?—648. When was U. S. Grant inaugurated?

649. The Fifteenth Amendment to the Constitution.—On March 30, 1870, the Fifteenth Amendment, which had been adopted by Congress a year before and approved by the required majority of the States, was proclaimed by the President a part of the Constitution. This amendment provides that no citizen of the United States shall be deprived of the privilege to vote on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

650. The "Alabama" claims.—President Grant pressed on the English government the claims of United States citizens for damage done during the Civil War to their ships and cargoes by the "Alabama" and other vessels fitted out in England for the Confederates. After long negotiations a treaty was agreed to at Washington by which the "Alabama" claims were to be submitted to a Board of Arbitration, that is, persons who would consider and settle the matters in dispute. This board met at Geneva, Switzerland, in 1872, and awarded to the United States $15,500,000 in payment of the "Alabama" claims.



ULYSSES S. GRANT.

651. The re-election of Grant.—General Grant's administration was not altogether satisfactory to some Republicans, so a new party, styling itself the "Liberal Republican Party," was formed and in 1872 nominated Horace Greeley, the editor of *The New York Tribune*, for President. The nomination was accepted by the Democrats. The Republicans renominated Grant, with Henry Wilson, of Massachusetts, as Vice-President, and this ticket was elected.

649. What is the Fifteenth Amendment?— 650. What is meant by the "Alabama" claims? To whom were they submitted? What was the result?—651. Who was the candidate of the "Liberal Republican Party" and the Democrats at the next election? Who was successful?

652. Indian troubles.—The attempt in 1872 to remove the Modoc Indians from their lands in Oregon to another reservation in the Indian Territory led to war. The Indians were defeated, but while General Canby was trying to make terms of peace with them he and another peace commissioner were treacherously murdered. The Modocs were subsequently conquered, and their chief, Captain Jack, and some other leaders were tried and hanged in 1873.

653. In 1876, under General Grant's second administration, another Indian war broke out, this time with the Sioux (*soo*) of Dakota. Many settlers on the frontier were barbarously massacred and their dwellings plundered and burned. General Custer, a distinguished officer, was sent to put down the Indians, and on June 25, 1876, attacked them at Big Horn Mountain on the Upper Yellowstone River. The Sioux, led by Sitting Bull, greatly outnumbered the United States troops, and Custer with his whole command of two hundred men was killed. The war continued for some months, and after repeated defeats the Indians, finding further resistance useless, escaped into Canada.

654. The centennial of our independence.—The year 1876, being the hundredth anniversary of the Independence of the United States, was commemorated by a World's Fair, or great exhibition, in Philadelphia. The finest manufactures and works of art were sent from all countries to this exhibition, which was daily visited by thousands for nearly seven months. Near the Fair buildings in Fairmount Park the Catholic Temperance Societies erected a memorial fountain, with statues of distinguished men of their faith. This monument remains one of the striking ornaments of the park.

652. What Indian troubles occurred? How were they settled?—653. What other Indian troubles occurred? What was Custer's fate?—654. Give an account of our centennial celebration.

655. Colorado admitted as a State.—Colorado was admitted as a State in July, 1876.

Topics for Review :—

Andrew Johnson, seventeenth President—The Amnesty Proclamation—The Thirteenth Amendment—Impeachment—Nebraska and Alaska in the Union—Election of Grant—The Fifteenth Amendment—The "Alabama" claims—The centennial of our independence—Colorado in the Union.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

THE ADMINISTRATIONS OF HAYES, GARFIELD, ARTHUR, CLEVELAND, AND HARRISON, AND CLEVELAND'S SECOND TERM.

656. A strong effort was made to nominate General Grant as President for a third term, but the Republicans selected Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, and the Democrats chose as their candidate Samuel J. Tilden, of New York.

657. A contested Presidential election.—The election was very closely contested. Of the one hundred and eighty-five votes necessary for election Tilden received one hundred and eighty-four. The votes of Florida, Louisiana, Oregon, and South Carolina were in dispute, and to determine who was entitled to them Congress appointed what is known as an Electoral Commission, composed of five Senators, five Congressmen, and five Judges of the Supreme Court. This commission, by a vote of eight to seven, decided that Hayes had been elected.

RUTHERFORD B. HAYES.

658. Rutherford B. Hayes, nineteenth President.—Rutherford B. Hayes was inaugurated as President and William A. Wheeler, of New York, as Vice-President, on March 5

655. What new State was admitted in 1876?—656. Who became Presidential candidates in 1876?—657. How was the election of 1876 settled?

(the 4th falling on Sunday), 1877. President Hayes during his administration acted in a friendly spirit toward the South, and did much to produce a better feeling among the several sections of the country.

659. Specie payments resumed.—During the Civil War the government issued paper money, called "greenbacks," from the color of the ink largely used in the printing. Some persons believed that if the South were successful the "greenbacks" would be worth very little. For a while this so affected the paper money that it fell in value, and it took two dollars and seventy-five cents of it to buy one dollar in gold. With the return of peace, however, confidence in the ability of the government to pay its debts was restored, and at last, on January 1, 1879, specie payment was resumed, that is, the government and the banks offered to pay the face value of the "greenbacks" in gold. At present paper money is generally preferred to coin, on account of its greater convenience.

JAMES A. GARFIELD.

660. James A. Garfield, twentieth President.—At the Presidential election of 1880 the candidate of the Republicans was James A. Garfield, of Ohio, and of the Democrats, Winfield Scott Hancock. Both had served with distinction in the Civil War. Garfield was elected President and Chester A. Arthur, of New York, Vice-President. They were inaugurated March 4, 1881.

661. Assassination of Garfield.—Four months after his inauguration, on July 2, 1881, President Garfield was shot

658. How did Hayes act toward the South?—659. What is said of the paper money issued by the government during the Civil War? Why and how much did it fall in value? When was specie payment made?—660. Who succeeded Hayes as President?

and mortally wounded by a disappointed office-seeker. Garfield lingered till September 19th, when he died at Long Branch, New Jersey.

662. Chester A. Arthur, twenty-first President.—By the death of Garfield Vice-President Chester A. Arthur became President. He filled out the remainder of the term for which Garfield had been elected, and conducted the government with great dignity, judgment, and prudence. During Arthur's administration, on October 1, 1883, the postage on letters weighing not more than half an ounce was reduced from three cents to two. Two years later the law was amended, so that a letter weighing an ounce could be sent for this same low rate. This was a most satisfactory evidence of the increasing prosperity of our country.

CHESTER A. ARTHUR.

663. Grover Cleveland, twenty-second President. — The election of 1884 showed a change in the feeling of the people. The Republicans nominated James G. Blaine, of Maine, as their candidate, and the Democrats selected as their standard-bearer Grover Cleveland, then governor of New York. Cleveland was elected, and inaugurated President on March 4, 1885, with Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana, as Vice-President. Thus for the

GROVER CLEVELAND.

661. What terrible tragedy occurred in July, 1881?—662. Who served out the term of Garfield's administration? What reduction was made in the postage on letters?

first time in twenty-five years the country was in the hands of a Democratic administration.

664. Death of General Grant and of General McClellan.—The great General Ulysses S. Grant, after months of intense suffering, died near Saratoga, New York, July 23, 1885, of cancer of the throat. Grant was considered at home and abroad as one of the great military commanders of his day, and during a tour of the world, made after his second term as President had expired, honors were heaped on him by the sovereigns of the Old World.

665. General George B. McClellan, another distinguished officer of the Civil War, died October 19, 1886. Vice-President Thomas A. Hendricks expired suddenly November 25, 1885, during his term of office.

666. Presidential succession.—The death of Vice-President Hendricks led to an important change in the law of Presidential succession, which was made in January, 1886. It provides that in case of the death or disability of the President and Vice-President the vacancy in the Presidency shall be filled by the Secretary of State. In case of his death the office passes in succession to the Secretary of War, the Attorney-General, Postmaster-General, Secretary of the Navy, and Secretary of the Interior.

667. Earthquake in Charleston.—Toward the end of the summer of 1886 Charleston, South Carolina, was visited by an earthquake, which bid fair to reduce the city to ruins. Many buildings were shaken down, others were damaged, and a number of lives were lost. Then the people of the whole country, North and South, East and West, in their generosity poured in money and other aid to the stricken city, and Charleston was not long in recovering.

663. What can you say of the election in 1884?—664. Give an account of the death of General Grant. What is said of Grant's tour of the world?—665. When did McClellan die? Vice-President Hendricks?—666. What change was made in the law of Presidential succession in 1886?—667. Describe the earthquake in Charleston in 1886. How were the stricken people assisted?

668. Benjamin Harrison, twenty-third President. — At the Presidential election of 1888 Grover Cleveland was again nominated by the Democrats, but the Republican candidate was successful. Benjamin Harrison, of Indiana, a grandson of a former President, was chosen President and Levi P. Morton, of New York, Vice-President. They were inaugurated March 4, 1889. During the year 1888 General Philip H. Sheridan passed away. He died August 5th, fortified by the consolations of our holy religion.

BENJAMIN HARRISON.

669. Oklahoma Territory.—In the early part of 1889 the United States bought from the Indians that part of the Indian Territory known as Oklahoma (*o-klah-ho'mah*), and on April 22d of the same year the newly-acquired territory was thrown open to settlers. The people poured in, and rude towns sprung up like mushrooms. One of these towns, Guthrie, in the course of four months had about five thousand population, several banks, and a number of daily papers.

670. The Washington Centennial.—In the same year New York City celebrated in a most imposing manner the hundredth anniversary of Washington's inauguration as first President of the United States. President Harrison and his Cabinet took part in the celebration, which continued for three days, from April 29th to May 1st. During this time business was completely suspended and New York was gay with bunting. There was a naval review, a grand military display, in which nearly every State of the Union was represented, and on the third day there was an

668. Who succeeded Cleveland as President?—669. What new Territory was added to the United States? What can you say of Guthrie?

industrial procession of the various trades and businesses of the city.

671. The Pan-American Congress.—In the fall of 1889 the Pan-American (from *pan*, a Greek word, meaning *all*) Congress met at Washington for the purpose of bringing about closer business relations among the several nations of the Western Continent. Sixty-six delegates attended as representatives from the Argentine Republic, Bolivia, Brazil, Chili, Colombia, Costa Rica, Ecuador, Guatemala, Hayti, Honduras, Mexico, Nicaragua, Paraguay, Peru, San Salvador, Uruguay, Venezuela, and the United States. Several weeks were spent in visiting the principal commercial and manufacturing places of the United States; afterward the representatives returned to Washington, where many months were passed in discussing the business of the Congress.

672. New States.—In November, 1889, North Dakota, South Dakota, Montana, and Washington were admitted as States, and the following year (1890) Idaho and Wyoming were also admitted, making forty-four States now in the Union.

673. Death of Sherman.—During the year 1891 the country was called upon to lament the death of General William T. Sherman, the last of the great trio of successful generals of our Civil War—Grant, Sherman, and Sheridan. General Sherman died February 14, 1891, in the seventy-first year of his age.

674. An alarm of war.—The opening of the year 1892 found the country on the verge of war with a sister-republic, Chili. Some United States sailors were set upon and murdered in the streets of Valparaiso. For this Chili was asked to apologize. At one time it looked as if she would

670. What centennial anniversary was celebrated in 1889? How was it celebrated?—671. What Congress was held in 1889? What was its object? What countries were epresented?—672. What new States came in in 1889? How many States are now in the Union?—673. What great man died in 1891, and on what day?

refuse to do so, but better counsels prevailed, amends were made, and war was happily averted.

675. The Australian Ballot.—In 1888 a new system of election, known as the Australian or Secret Ballot, was introduced here by the State of Massachusetts and the city of Louisville, Ky., and has since been adopted, with some changes, by forty-three States. The ballots, which contain the names of the candidates of the different political parties, are printed by the State; and the voter, who is alone when he prepares his ballot, is free from all outside influence.

676. In October, 1892, the four hundredth anniversary of the discovery of America by Columbus was commemorated by celebrations of various kinds; in some of these the school children of the country took part, marching in procession. In the same month the main building of the World's Columbian Exposition, at Chicago, the principal feature of the celebration, was dedicated with appropriate ceremonies.

677. Cleveland's Second Administration, twenty-fourth President.—In the November elections of 1892 the Democrats showed great gains, and carried not only their Presidential ticket, headed again by Grover Cleveland and Adlai E. Stevenson, of Illinois, but obtained a majority in both houses of Congress. A new political party, known as the "People's Party," or "Populists," elected 22 out of the 444 Presidential electors.

678. The World's Columbian Exposition.—On May 1, 1893, our great industrial exhibition was opened to the public. There were present the Duke of Veragua, the lineal descendent of Columbus, as the guest of the nation; President Cleveland, with his Cabinet; the representatives of foreign governments, and the officials of the Exposition.

674. What calamity was threatened in 1892? What was the cause? How was it averted?—675. What change was made in the system of election?—677. Who was elected President in 1892? What is the name of the new political party? How many electoral votes did they gain?

The Fair surpassed anything of the kind ever held before, and was visited by upwards of twenty-one millions of people. The Catholic school exhibit called forth great praise from the judges, who were men of national reputation.

679. An Extra Session of Congress.—The spring of 1893 was marked by a money panic, followed in the summer by a general depression in business. In the hope of relieving this, the President called an extra session of Congress, and the clause in the law of 1890 which required the government to buy four and a half million ounces of silver every month was repealed. The uncertainty as to the outcome of the tariff bill contributed in a great measure to the existing want of confidence; many mills and factories closed, and a vast number of people were thrown out of employment.

680. The Behring Sea Dispute.—In this same year (1893) the dispute in regard to the hunting of seals in the Behring Sea was settled. Our government claimed that, as the owners of Alaska, we alone had the right to fish and hunt in the waters surrounding it. This claim was disputed by other nations, and so the matter was referred to a commission, which represented the United States, Great Britain, France, Italy, Norway, and Sweden. This commission decided that the seal hunters of other countries could not be shut out of Behring Sea, but that the hunting should be restricted to certain seasons of the year.

681. The Wilson Tariff.—The Atlanta Exposition.—The admission of Utah.—At the next regular session of Congress, after a long and bitter debate, the Wilson tariff, a modification of the McKinley Bill of 1890, was passed, and became a law August 27, 1894.

In the fall of 1895 the "Cotton States and International Exposition" was opened at Atlanta, Georgia. It proved

678. When did the World's Columbian Exposition open? What exhibit called forth great praise?—679. What law was repealed in the extra session of Congress in 1893?—680. How was the Behring Sea dispute settled?

to be a highly interesting exhibit, and showed in an unmistakable manner the wonderful advance made by the South during the last thirty years.

In January, 1896, Utah was admitted to the Union, thus adding the forty-fifth star to our flag.

682. The Venezuela Question.—During 1896 the vexed question respecting the boundary line of British Guiana, a territory on the northern coast of South America, belonging to Great Britain, was amicably settled by an agreement made between England and the United States.

683. William McKinley, twenty-fifth President.—The Presidential election of 1896, which hinged principally on the tariff and the money standard, resulted in the election of the candidates of the Republican party, William McKinley, of Ohio, for President, and Garret A. Hobart, of New Jersey, for Vice-President.

Topics for Review:—

A contested election—Hayes, nineteenth President—Specie payments—Election of Garfield—Assassination of Garfield—Arthur, twenty-first President—Election of Cleveland—Presidential succession—Harrison elected President—The Washington Centennial—The Pan-American Congress—New States—The Australian Ballot—Cleveland's Second Administration.

REVIEW VI.—RECONSTRUCTION.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF JOHNSON AND OF GRANT:—

Johnson, sixteenth President—The Amnesty Proclamation—The Thirteenth Amendment—Reconstruction—The national debt—Impeachment of the President—Nebraska and Alaska—Grant, eighteenth President—The Fifteenth Amendment—The "Alabama" claims—Re-election of Grant—The centennial celebration—Colorado.

681. What place was admitted as a State in 1896? How many stars are now in our flag?—682. What dispute was settled in 1896?—683. Who was elected in 1896, and to what office?

THE ADMINISTRATIONS OF HAYES, GARFIELD, ARTHUR, CLEVELAND, HARRISON, AND CLEVELAND'S SECOND TERM.

A contested Presidential election—Hayes, nineteenth President—Specie payments resumed—Garfield, twentieth President—The assassination of Garfield—Arthur, twenty-first President—Reduction of postage—Cleveland, twenty-second President—The Presidential succession—Harrison, twenty-third President—Oklahoma—The Pan-American Congress—New States—The Australian Ballot—Cleveland, twenty-fourth President—The World's Columbian Exposition—The purchase of Silver by the government—The Behring Sea dispute—The Wilson tariff—The admission of Utah—The Venezuelan boundary.

Part VII.—Expansion.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF MCKINLEY—THE WAR WITH SPAIN—ANNEXATION—ASSASSINATION OF MCKINLEY.

684. The Dingley Tariff.—The first act of President McKinley, two days after his inauguration, was to call an extra session of Congress. A new tariff bill, which took its name from Representative Dingley of Maine, its author, was at once passed. By it duties were levied on raw wool and on some other articles which were free under the former tariff, and higher rates were placed on sugar, silks, woollens, and other woollen fabrics.

WILLIAM MCKINLEY.

685. Greater New York.—On January 1, 1898, the old cities of New York and Brooklyn, together with several towns and districts of Long Island and Staten Island, consolidated and became known as "Greater New York." The new metropolis, which is divided into the boroughs of Manhattan, the Bronx, Brooklyn, Queens, and Richmond, covers an area of 308 square miles, with an estimated pop-

684. What was President McKinley's first act? What bill was passed? What was its effect?

ulation of 3,490,091 inhabitants,* making it the second largest city in the world, London being the largest.

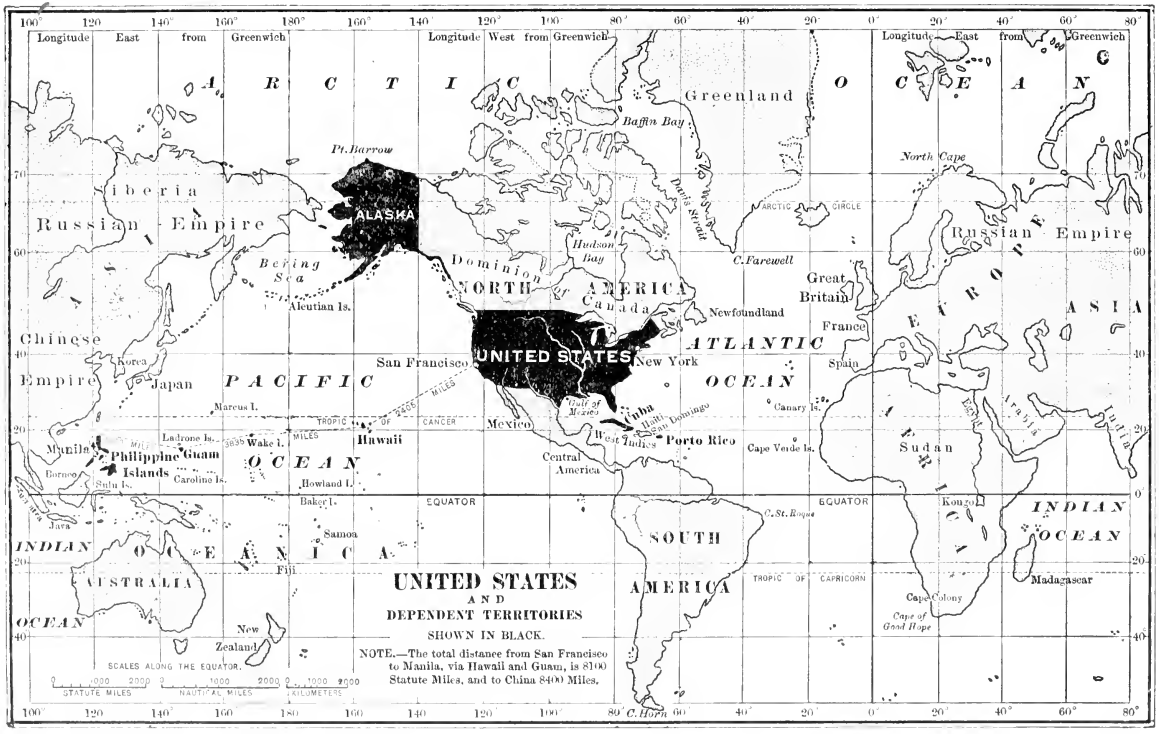
686. Revolution in Cuba.—In an endeavor to attain independence, the people of the island of Cuba had been, more or less, in a state of revolt against Spain for over thirty years. The last of these rebellions began in February, 1895. The distress on the island was very great; multitudes of the peasants were driven by the Spanish authorities from their fields and homes to the garrisoned towns, where thousands died of starvation. Spain seemed powerless to help, and accordingly our government appealed to the people of the United States for money and food to relieve the suffering. This offer of relief was resented by many in Spain and by her friends in Cuba, and when, in January, 1898, riots broke out in Havana, it was feared that the United States consulate there would be mobbed.

687. The Destruction of the "Maine."—To guard against any danger that might threaten our citizens in Cuba, the Secretary of the Navy dispatched a fleet to the Gulf of Mexico, with its headquarters at Key West. Later on the battleship "Maine" was ordered to Havana. While lying in the harbor of that port, on the night of February 15th, between 9 and 10 o'clock, the noble vessel, with her living cargo of over three hundred souls, was blown into the air. Two hundred and forty-six of the men and two of the officers were killed and more than fifty of the men were injured.

688. Reverend John P. Chidwick.—When the terrible disaster came upon the ship, Father John P. Chidwick, the chaplain, remained at his post until commanded to leave the vessel by his superior officer, Captain Sigsbee, who also stuck steadfastly at his post. Father Chidwick stayed near

685. What happened on January 1, 1898? How large is "Greater New York"?—686. What did our government do in order to relieve the suffering in Cuba? How was this offer received by many in Spain? —687. What happened in Havana harbor on the night of February 15, 1898?

* Population in 1920.



UNITED STATES
AND
DEPENDENT TERRITORIES
SHOWN IN BLACK.

NOTE.—The total distance from San Francisco to Manila, via Hawaii and Guam, is 8100 Statute Miles, and to China 8400 Miles.

the wreck, naming the dead as they were found, for he was the only one of the ship's company who knew every man. He passed hours in the hospital, consoling the wounded and the dying. He sent messages home, and gave in return words of cheer and of love from distant ones. In a word, he did all that we are taught to look for in a man and a priest.

689. An Investigation.—Preparing for War.—An investigation into the cause of the disaster was at once begun, but, while it was settled that the explosion was from the outside of the vessel, it was not determined whether it was the result of accident or of design.

In the meantime the United States prepared to send government cruisers with food to the starving poor of Cuba. Spain objected to this use of armed vessels, and also expressed a wish that Consul-General Lee should be replaced by some one else. In answer, our government replied that, while the supplies could be shipped by light-house tenders, General Lee would not be recalled.

On April 11, 1898, President McKinley sent a special message to Congress; in this he reviewed the condition of Cuba since the outbreak of the insurrection, declared that the war must stop, but advised against the recognition of the so-called Republic of Cuba. This was followed a few days later by a resolution of both houses of Congress that the people of Cuba ought to be free, that the government of the United States demand that Spain relinquish its authority and government in the island of Cuba, and in the event of refusing to do this that the President be directed and empowered to use the army and navy of the United States to carry out this resolution.

690. War with Spain.—The President signed this resolution on the morning of April 20, 1898; the Spanish Minister

688. Who is Reverend John P. Chidwick? How did he act when the explosion occurred on the "Maine"?—689. What was settled in regard to the cause of the explosion on the "Maine"? To what did Spain object? What resolution was passed by both houses of Congress?

at once asked for his passports and left Washington, and on the following day General Stewart L. Woodford, our Minister at Madrid, received his passports. War had begun.

691. The Battle of Manila.—The call of the President for 125,000 volunteers was responded to promptly. The first move was to send the fleet then at Key West to blockade the ports of Cuba. On May 2d the country was electrified by the news that the Spaniards had been utterly defeated in the first naval battle. The engagement took place in Manila Bay, in the Philippine Islands, and our squadron, commanded by Commodore (now Admiral) George Dewey, destroyed the entire fleet of the enemy. While their loss in killed and wounded was severe, on our side not a ship was lost, and, wonderful to relate, not a man was killed.

ADMIRAL GEORGE DEWEY.

Though Dewey might have taken the city of Manila by bombarding it, he could not hold it or the adjacent country without a land force. Accordingly General Wesley Merritt was directed to forward troops at once for the investment of Manila.

692. Cervera at Santiago.— On May 19th Admiral Cervera with a formidable fleet succeeded in entering the inner harbor of Santiago de Cuba. Admiral Sampson and Commodore Schley, while doubtful whether our squadron could enter the narrow harbor, determined that, at least, the Spaniards should not escape. To this end, Lieutenant Richmond Pearson Hobson with seven men steamed into the harbor with the collier "Merrimac," and, by exploding powder-charges which he had arranged, sank his vessel in

690. When was war begun?—691. Tell what you know of the battle of Manila.

the narrowest part of the channel. When the "Merrimac" went down, Hobson and his men succeeded in getting off, but they were picked up in the water by a Spanish launch, which took them to shore as prisoners.

ADMIRAL WILLIAM T. SAMPSON.

693. The attack on Santiago.—General William R. Shafter with a force of about 17,000 men reached Santiago in the latter part of June, and severe fighting began at once. On July 1st our army attacked the enemy's strong position at El Caney, two or three miles from the San Juan hills, and for three days a desperate battle followed. Finally, however, the Spaniards gave way, and were driven back into the city, and Shafter demanded the surrender of their army and of the city of Santiago. It was during this battle that the Seventy-first Regiment New York Volunteers and the First Volunteer Cavalry, or "The Rough Riders," distinguished themselves.

694. Destruction of Cervera's Fleet.—On July 3d Admiral Cervera with six battleships, the pride of the Spanish navy, attempted to come out of Santiago harbor, in the hope of escaping or, it may be, of destroying our vessels. Commodore Schley, who was in command of our fleet during the absence of Admiral Sampson, who had gone a short distance down the coast, at once prepared to do battle with the Spaniard. Both

ADMIRAL W. S. SCHLEY.

692. Describe what happened at Santiago de Cuba.—693. When did General Shafter attack Santiago?

sides began firing at the same time, but before noon of that eventful Sunday the magnificent Spanish battleships were dismantled wrecks. The Spanish loss was about 600 killed and drowned and nearly 2,000 captured, including Admiral Cervera himself; the American loss was 1 man killed and 1 wounded. Within a fortnight after the above event the city and province of Santiago de Cuba, with over 22,000 troops, surrendered to our land forces.

695. General Miles at Porto Rico.—Porto Rico was garrisoned by a force of over 8,000 Spanish regulars and 9,000 volunteers. On July 25th General Nelson A. Miles landed his troops quietly at Guanica, near Ponce, and during the nineteen days of active campaign work which followed, a large portion of the island was captured by our forces. The Spaniards were defeated in six different engagements, and by August 12th preparations had been made for a decisive combat, when the news of the suspension of hostilities reached the army.

696. The end of the war.—Disheartened, perhaps, by continuous defeat, Spain made overtures of peace. On July 30th the reply of the United States was in the hands of the French ambassador at Washington, who was Spain's representative in this matter, and on August 25, 1898, the Spanish cabinet accepted the terms of peace, and hostilities ceased.

697. The terms of Peace.—The protocol, or first sketch of a treaty, of peace provides, among other terms, that Spain relinquishes all claim of sovereignty over and title to Cuba; that Porto Rico and other Spanish islands in the West Indies, and an island in the Ladrones, to be selected by the United States, shall be ceded to the latter.

698. Capture of Manila.—Right on top of the news of peace came a dispatch announcing that Admiral Dewey and

694. How did Cervera's attempt at escape result? When did Santiago de Cuba surrender? How many prisoners were taken?—695. What took place at Porto Rico?—696. When did Spain accept our terms of peace?—697. What are some of the terms of peace?

General Merritt had bombarded Manila, and that the place was now in possession of the United States.

699. Peace proclaimed.—The treaty of peace having been concluded and signed at Paris, December 10, 1898, by the representatives of the two nations, it was formally proclaimed to the people of the United States and to the world by President McKinley on April 11, 1899.

700. Annexation of Hawaii.—Had the Republic of Hawaii observed the rules of neutrality, our campaign in the Philippines would have been much more difficult. But, so far from doing this, she offered every facility to our army and navy transports to take on supplies at Honolulu, and we were as free to use the islands for our purposes in the Pacific as if they were our own. This, no doubt, influenced Congress, and when the bill came before it for the annexation of Hawaii it was passed by a vote of 209 to 91. Later it received a majority in the Senate and the signature of the President, and on July 6, 1898, Hawaii was annexed to the United States. It remained under military rule until April, 1900, when a bill was passed by both houses, and approved by the President, creating Hawaii a Territory of the United States, and the Hawaiians citizens of our republic.

701. Samoa embraces fourteen islands in the Pacific Ocean, with an area of about 1700 square miles. By a treaty made at Berlin in 1889 the affairs of the islands were placed under the joint supervision of the United States, Great Britain, and Germany. In 1898 the King of Samoa died, and a dispute arose as to who should succeed him. There were two candidates, one of whom had the support of Germany, the other of Great Britain and the United States. The latter, Malietoa, was finally recognized king. In January, 1899, however, his government was overthrown and in its place a provisional government was set up. This led to complications of various kinds and finally to war, and in

698. What dispatch was received just after the news of peace?—
700. What circumstances influenced Congress to annex Hawaii?—
701. How did the United States acquire territory in Samoa?

March, 1899, several Samoan villages were bombarded by British and American vessels. Eventually the matter was referred to a commission and a partition of the islands was agreed upon, by which the United States acquired the island of Tutuila with the harbor of Pago-Pago and all other islands of the Samoan group east of longitude 171° West.

702. The Proposed Inter-Oceanic Canal.—The idea of a canal to connect the Atlantic with the Pacific Ocean, and so shorten the distance between their seaports, was revived by the war with Spain and the acquirement of new territory, and a commission was appointed to inquire into the feasibility and the cost of a canal across Nicaragua. The commission reported in favor of the proposed route, and estimated the cost at about $200,000,000.

703. War in the Philippines.—The transfer, by conquest and by purchase, to the United States of the Philippines gave offence to many of the natives, and resulted on the island of Luzon in the breaking out of hostilities, which for a time looked serious. However, in March, 1901, Emilio Aguinaldo, the insurgent leader, was captured; he took the oath of allegiance to the United States, and issued a manifesto to his followers, advising them to lay down their arms.

704. Re-election of McKinley.—The Presidential election of 1900, which hinged mainly on the question of expansion, resulted in the re-election of William McKinley, the Republican candidate, with Theodore Roosevelt, of New York, as Vice-President.

705. Assassination of President McKinley.—President

702. What is the object of an inter-oceanic canal?—703. What led to hostilities on the island of Luzon?—704. What was the result of the election of 1900?

McKinley had served six months of his second term as President, and grown steadily in the affections of the people, when he was suddenly struck down by the hand of an assassin. On Friday, September 6, 1901, while receiving his fellow-citizens at the Pan-American Exposition, Buffalo, N. Y., the President was shot and mortally wounded by Leon F. Czolgosz, an Anarchist. The President lingered until Saturday, September 14, when he died.

THEODORE ROOSEVELT.

706. Theodore Roosevelt, Twenty-sixth President.—On the afternoon of the same day that President McKinley died, Theodore Roosevelt, Vice-President, took the oath of office, and became President, by right of succession.

Topics for Review:—

Revolution in Cuba—Destruction of the "Maine"—War with Spain—The annexation of Hawaii—The Nicaragua Canal—War in the Philippines—Assassination of President McKinley.

REVIEW VII.—EXPANSION.

MCKINLEY'S ADMINISTRATION:—

The Dingley Tariff—Revolution in Cuba—The Destruction of the "Maine"—An Investigation—Preparing for War—War with Spain—The End of the War—Peace Proclaimed—Annexation of Hawaii—Samoa—Proposed Inter-Oceanic Canal—War in the Philippines—Re-election of McKinley—Assassination of President McKinley—Theodore Roosevelt, Twenty-sixth President.

705. What terrible national calamity happened on September 6, 1901?
706. Who succeeded McKinley as President?

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

THE PANAMA CANAL—THE ELECTION OF ROOSEVELT—THE SAN FRANCISCO EARTHQUAKE.

707. The Panama Canal.—Soon after President Roosevelt took office the inter-oceanic canal project came up for consideration. The Nicaragua plan was abandoned. The Isthmian Canal Commission reported in favor of the purchase of the canal rights of the New Panama Canal Company of France for $40,000,000. This report was sent to Congress on January 20, 1902. As a result the Isthmian Canal Act was passed by Congress June 28, of the same year, authorizing the payment of the sum recommended by the Commission, and in addition the acquirement of a strip of land on the Isthmus not less than six miles wide. At this time Panama was a part of the United States of Colombia, and it was with Colombia the United States first treated for the strip. The Colombians rejected the proposed treaty—action that was followed almost immediately by the formation of the Republic of Panama, which declared its independence in November, 1903. Recognition was at once accorded by the United States. Arrangements for the acquisition of land followed. These included the cession of a strip of land ten miles wide, extending from ocean to ocean, and a perpetual monopoly of all trans-Isthmian transportation. For these and other concessions the United States paid the Republic $10,000,000, and agreed to pay annually $250,000 during the life of the treaty, payments to begin nine years later. April 22, 1904, the New Panama Canal Company transferred its rights to the United States, and the Canal strip became

officially known as the Canal Zone. Organization was effected, and canal construction begun, which has continued without interruption. July 21, 1906, the lock type of canal was definitely decided upon. It is expected that the Canal will be completed by 1915.

708. Pious Fund of the Californias.—In 1902, the long-pending claim of the Catholic Church in California against Mexico, made through the United States government, for its share of the Pious Fund of the Californias, was adjusted. More than two hundred years before the Society of Jesus undertook the conversion of the Indians of California, under an agreement with Spain that the Society should not draw against the royal revenues for expenses. At that time all California was a part of Mexico. Many and large contributions were received by the Society, and the sum of these became known as the Pious Fund of the Californias. Eventually, the Mexican government took charge of the money. When the United States purchased Upper California in 1848, Mexico declined to pay to the Catholic Church of that section the money that was its due. In 1848 the Archbishop of San Francisco and others presented a claim against Mexico for the sum due. After continued effort by the United States, the matter was referred to a tribunal of the Permanent Court of Arbitration, sitting under The Hague Convention, at The Hague, Holland. A decision was rendered on October 14, 1902, in favor of the claim of the United States, acting for the benefit of the Archbishop of San Francisco and others, by which the Church in California received $1,420,682.67, in addition to a perpetual annuity of $43,050.99.

709. Roosevelt Elected.—The result of the election of

707. How did the United States acquire the Panama Canal?—
708. What is the Pious Fund of the Californias?

1904 was the choice of Theodore Roosevelt as President, and Charles W. Fairbanks, of Indiana, as Vice-President. There had been no elected Vice-President for nearly four years.

710. Baltimore Fire.—The most disastrous fire in the history of Baltimore, Md., February 7 and 8, 1904, destroyed 2,500 buildings, covering 170 acres, causing a property loss of $70,000,000. Great as the calamity was, the work of rebuilding began as soon as the ruins cooled, and in less than two years the entire section devastated was covered with buildings far superior to those destroyed.

711. Peace of Portsmouth.—In June, 1905, President Roosevelt offered his services as mediator to end the war then existing between Russia and Japan. His offer was accepted, and representatives of both countries conferred at the Portsmouth, N. H., Navy Yard, where a treaty of peace was signed on September 5, 1905.

712. Earthquake in San Francisco.—Early on the morning of April 18, 1906, San Francisco, Cal., was shaken by the first of a series of earthquake shocks which continued at intervals for several days, causing great loss of life and $400,000,000 damage to property. Thousands of persons were compelled to live in the public parks for weeks, some sheltered by tents furnished by the government. There was much suffering from lack of food, but contributions were soon received in such volume that the supply was far in excess of the demand.

713. Intervention in Cuba.—After the war with Spain ended, the United States tried to teach Cuba self-

709. Who was chosen President in 1904?—710. What disaster befell Baltimore, Md., in 1904?—711. What was the Peace of Portsmouth?—712. Describe the San Francisco earthquake.

government. When Tomas Estrada Palma was elected President of the Republic, American soldiers and civil officials were withdrawn from the island. In September, 1906, a condition bordering on anarchy existed, and President Palma resigned. The United States intervened and governed Cuba until 1908, when Jose Miguel Gomez was chosen the Republic's President. The year following the United States again withdrew its forces.

714. Cruise of the American Battleship Fleet.—A fleet of sixteen battleships, the flower of the United States Navy, which sailed from Hampton Roads, Va., December 16, 1907, sailed around the world, the cruise occupying a year. The return of the fleet was the occasion of the most elaborate all-American naval display in history. It was the most remarkable voyage ever undertaken by a fleet of battleships, and the entire cruise was unmarred by serious mishap.

Topics for Review:—

The Panama Canal—Pious Fund of the Californias—Roosevelt Elected—Baltimore Fire—Peace of Portsmouth—Earthquake in San Francisco—Intervention in Cuba—Cruise of American Battleship Fleet.

713. Why did the United States intervene in Cuba?—714. What remarkable voyage was made by American battleships?

CHAPTER XXXIX.

THE TAFT ADMINISTRATION, 1909–1913.

715. William Howard Taft, Twenty-seventh President.—In the Presidential election of 1908 William Howard Taft, of Ohio, the candidate of the Republican party, was made President and James S. Sherman, of New York, Vice-President. The first notable official act of President Taft, in March, 1909, was to call an extra session of Congress to consider the question of a revision of the tariff. As the result of this session, on August 5 of that year, the Payne-Aldrich Tariff Law was passed. By this law the duties on some goods were slightly reduced, while on others they were increased.

WILLIAM H. TAFT.

716. The Discovery of the North Pole.—In September, 1909, the whole civilized world in general and the American people in particular were overjoyed at the news that Commander Robert Edwin Peary, of the American navy, had reached the North Pole on April 6, 1909. The search to which he had devoted his life for eighteen years, and in which so many noble lives had been sacrificed was at last rewarded. His services to science and his contributions to geographical knowledge met with deserved recognition and in 1910 Congress

voted him the rank of a rear-admiral in the American Navy.

717. Postal Banks.—On June 25, 1910, Congress passed an act to establish postal savings depositories for depositing savings at interest with the security of the Government for repayment thereof. The purpose of this act is to encourage a habit of thrift among the people of our country and to provide places where their savings will be absolutely safe. In these depositories, or Government Savings Banks, any person of the age of ten years or over may open an account for the sum of one dollar or a larger amount.

718. Mexico in Revolution.—In January, 1911, Francisco I. Madero headed a revolt in Mexico, with the result that General Porfirio Diaz was compelled to resign. For long years as President he had successfully ruled that country, but with an iron hand. Now, however, he yielded to a superior force, and toward the end of May he sailed for France, there to take up his residence.

In October, 1911, Madero was elected President. His was but a short triumph, for in 1913 Felix Diaz, a nephew of General Porfirio Diaz, reached Mexico, and with an army of insurgents, after repeated defeats and triumphs, succeeded not only in driving Madero from his position as President, but made him prisoner. Later on Madero was killed, accidentally, it was claimed. He was succeeded as President by General Huerta.

At one time the fighting was brought so near the American border-line that President Taft hurried United States troops there, and notified the Mexican authorities that harm of any kind to American citizens would be followed by quick action on the part of our government

719. Treaties. — In September, 1910, the Hague Tribunal clearly defined to the satisfaction of both nations the long disputed question as to what rights the treaty of 1783 with Great Britain gave to Americans in regard to their fishing off the shores of Newfoundland.

In August, 1911, a treaty was signed between the United States and Great Britain and between the United States and France whereby it was agreed that all disputes between our country and the two nations above mentioned should be referred to the Hague Tribunal for settlement.

720. Initiative, Referendum, and Recall. — For a quarter of a century there has been an increasing desire on the part of the American people to get the control of public affairs out of the hands of politicians and directly into their own. Among the many means discussed for this end are the Initiative, the Referendum, and the Recall. These were adopted in 1898. South Dakota and one third of the States have adopted them in the twenty-one years since that date. The Initiative allows the people to propose a law by petition. The Referendum provides that a law may be voted upon directly by the people, not through their representatives. The Recall allows a public official to be deposed from office by the direct vote of the people, should he prove unsatisfactory to them.

721. New Mexico and Arizona become States. — On January 4, 1912, President Taft issued a proclamation recognizing the admission of New Mexico to the Union as a State and on February 14, another in which the admission of Arizona to Statehood in the Union was proclaimed. There are now forty-eight States.

722. The presidential election of 1912. — In the Presidential election of 1912, one of the most exciting contests ever witnessed in this country, Woodrow Wilson, governor of New Jersey, the candidate of the Democratic party, was elected President, and Thomas R. Marshall, governor of Indiana, Vice-President.

WOODROW WILSON.

723. Our relations with Central and South America. — One of the first acts of President Wilson was to define the policy of his administration toward Central and South America. He declared that our government would endeavor to cultivate the friendship and deserve the confidence of our sister republics, and to promote in every honorable way the interests that are common to the two continents.

724. An extra session of Congress. — The President issued a proclamation calling an extra session of Congress for April 7. The revision of the Tariff with a view to reducing the high cost of living was the principal business of this session. After much discussion the Underwood Tariff bill was passed which meant a radical change in the Payne-Aldrich Tariff law. Under the provisions of the new bill, which the President's signature shortly after made a law, all duties on the necessities of life and products controlled by trusts were removed or reduced. The free list included many articles that contributed to the comfort of the average man, while the users of luxuries were called on to carry a heavier load than now laid on them, and people of wealth were to contribute

more liberally to help remove the burden of taxation from those less able to bear it.

725. An income tax. — The Tariff Revision Bill includes an Income Tax section, which previously had been approved as a constitutional amendment, by which every resident of the United States is required to pay a tax on his yearly earnings in excess of a specified amount allowed for living expenses.

Topics for Review: —

William H. Taft, Twenty-seventh President—The Discovery of the North Pole—Postal Banks—Mexico in Revolution—Treaties—The Initiative, the Referendum, the Recall—New Mexico and Arizona—Woodrow Wilson, Twenty-eighth President—Our Relations with Central and South America—An Extra Session of Congress—An Income Tax.

715. What was the effect of the Payne-Aldrich Tariff Law?—716. Who discovered the North Pole?—What rank did Congress confer on him?—717. What is the purpose of the Postal Banks?—719. What is the effect of the treaties made in 1910 and 1911?—720. What is the Initiative, the Referendum, the Recall?—722. Who was elected President in 1912?—724. Why did the President call an extra session of Congress?

CHAPTER XL.

THE WILSON ADMINISTRATION, 1913–1920.

726. Woman Suffrage.—A small percentage of women in the United States for a long time have striven for the right to vote; within a few years the movement has gained immensely. In 1919 there were fifteen States giving women full suffrage, while in other States women are allowed to vote for certain public officials. The question of equal franchise for both sexes is one of the issues of the day. It is now decided by each State for itself, but leaders of the Suffrage Party demand an amendment of the Constitution that will make woman suffrage a national law.

727. Federal Reserve Banks.—In 1913 the Federal Reserve Law was passed. This measure was designed to curb the growing power of great banking centres, to make banking easier for those living distant from cities, and to prevent money panics.

Federal Reserve Banks were instituted under the control of a National Board consisting of seven members: the Secretary of the Treasury, the Comptroller of Currency, and five other members appointed by the President. Under this law twelve small banks in a district may combine for their mutual benefit, forming a union under the control of the Federal Reserve Board.

The Parcel Post system was extended under the first administration of President Wilson, its use proportionately increased. Airplane postal service began in 1918.

728. A protectorate and new possessions.—In 1907 San Domingo owed money to France and Italy which

727. What were the benefits and purposes of the Federal Reserve Law?

they were getting ready to collect by force when President Roosevelt stepped between the creditors and debtor. Our government undertook to pay San Domingo's debt. This was lest trouble should arise from the intervention of foreign powers in the island's affairs. Revolutions were frequent there; in 1914 there was a revolt in the island over election disputes. American officers and marines were sent to quell it. The United States assumed by treaty a protectorate over San Domingo. A year later, for similar reasons, we assumed a protectorate over Haiti. Both these small republics are under our control.

In 1917 the United States bought from Denmark the islands off Porto Rico, known as the Virgin Islands. In 1869 and again in 1902 we had tried to make this purchase, but the first time our senate refused to buy, and in 1902 Denmark refused to sell the islands. The Danish refusal to sell was due to German influence. In 1917 Germany had her hands full with the World War and could not interfere with the sale. So we bought St. Croix, St. Thomas, and St. John, the group called the Danish, or Virgin Islands.

729. Mexican troubles.—When President Wilson took the oath for the first time he found serious trouble with Mexico awaiting him. That republic has for years suffered under political disturbances, revolutions, and their attendant evils. Under Diaz as president Mexico had been comparatively peaceful and prosperous. In 1911 there was an insurrection against Diaz that forced him from office, and the country was given over to bloody feuds. Although Mexico is Catholic, Catholic churches

728. What trouble arose in San Domingo in 1907, and how was it settled? When and from whom were the Virgin Islands purchased? What group comprises the Islands?—729. What were the results of the uprising against Diaz in Mexico?

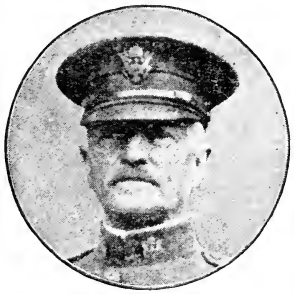
were desecrated and robbed; property rights, life itself, were destroyed; violence was rife. One after another a succession of bandits claimed supreme power. At last one Madero came to the fore, but he was murdered, and Huerta succeeded him. President Wilson refused to recognize Huerta as president because he believed him responsible for Madero's murder. While Huerta was in office his men captured a few American sailors from a vessel flying the Stars and Stripes. The men were freed, but President Wilson demanded an apology and a salute to the flag in reparation for its insult. Huerta refused this. A German ship came to Vera Cruz bringing ammunition for the Mexican government. President Wilson ordered the custom house at Vera Cruz seized by American soldiers to prevent the landing of supplies likely to be used against us. Fighting occurred, lives were lost on both sides, and Vera Cruz was taken by Americans.

730. A. B. C. envoys.—Argentina, Brazil, and Chile offered to send commissioners to discuss terms to avoid a threatened war between the United States and Mexico. They met on the Canada side of Niagara Falls. With our representatives they agreed upon terms which included the downfall of Huerta. President Wilson then recognized Carranza, one of the Mexican leaders, as Mexican president.

731. Villa's raid.—Many people demanded that President Wilson should interfere in Mexican affairs for the protection of our interests. He refused to interfere, maintaining Mexico's right and obligation to restore order within her borders. There was a bandit named Villa who refused to admit Carranza's authority. He

729. What serious event occurred at Vera Cruz during President Wilson's administration?—730. Who were the A. B. C. envoys?

began a course of outrage. He made raids into United States territory, murdering Americans, destroying property. It was necessary to send a small American army under General Pershing to disperse the bandit horde, to protect villages on our border. Villa's bands were scattered, but the leader escaped.



GENERAL JOHN J. PERSHING.

732. The World War.—The first days of August, 1914, brought from overseas tidings so terrible that people could hardly believe them. War had begun in Europe! Germany and Austria-Hungary—called the "Teutonic" or Central Powers—with Turkey and Bulgaria, were fighting the "Allies," or Entente Powers—Russia, France, and Great Britain—who, in addition to Serbia and Belgium, were joined by Montenegro, Japan, and Italy. As will be seen below, the United States did not enter the war till 1917.

Immediately on the declaration of war Germany marched upon France, and to get there by the easiest way, invaded Belgium. Belgium was a neutral country, protected by solemn treaty from invasion. Germany counted upon Belgium's saving herself from destruction by letting the German army pass through her territory to France. But heroic little Belgium, led by her king and her great primate, Cardinal Mercier, resisted. Though she had not strength to hold out long, her resistance kept the enemy out of France long enough to give the French army time to assemble.

733. Our Neutrality.—On August 8, 1914, President

731. Explain Villa's raid and the result.—732. When did the World War begin, and who were the leading nations on each side?

Wilson issued a proclamation of our strict neutrality in the World War. Though we were three thousand miles away from the battlefields there was daily communication between us and Europe. We had citizens sprung from every race at war. Supplies of food and ammunition had to be purchased here by the combatants; neutrality was hard to maintain. In one beautiful way we participated in the war from the first: we alleviated suffering. We fed Belgium or she would have starved. By the American Red Cross; by generous outpouring of wealth; by personal service of self-sacrificing Americans, who offered themselves to work in hospitals, among the homeless, and on the front, we did all we could to heal the wounds inflicted on those frightful battlefields.

734. The second term of Woodrow Wilson. — In spite of plots to involve us in the war, in spite of adverse criticism, President Wilson maintained our strict neutrality. In 1916 there was a presidential election in which Woodrow Wilson was again the Democratic candidate, and Charles E. Hughes, of New York, Associate Judge of the United States Supreme Court, was his Republican opponent. The early returns of this election gave Mr. Hughes the victory, but later returns showed President Wilson re-elected with a gain of 2,000,000 popular votes over his election in 1912. This was considered a personal victory. It was largely due to the fact that became expressed in a campaign slogan: "He kept us out of war." Yet hardly had Mr. Wilson been reseated than he was forced to declare war.

735. The causes which led the United States into the World War.—In the second year of the war — 1915 —

733. What policy did President Wilson pursue at the outbreak of the war? What part did Americans as individuals play toward the war-stricken peoples?

Germany had begun her system of submarine attacks. It is an established law of warfare that an enemy's merchant ships shall not be sunk without provision for the safety of their crews, and of such passengers as they may carry. So Americans travelling by sea on English liners had a right to expect to do so safely. Moreover, Americans were still neutrals. But on May 7, 1915, the world was horrified when, without warning, a German submarine sunk the great British passenger ship, the "Lusitania." With her sank hundreds of innocent people, helpless women and children, among them many Americans. President Wilson sent a protest to the German government, demanding reparation and a promise to end such warfare. Germany answered evasively, and went on sinking ships without warning, some of them American. Again the President wrote to Berlin. On September 1, 1915, Germany gave the pledge that the President demanded. During this delay and exchange of notes the people of the United States began to arouse, to demand war. There were many who considered sinking our ships, with the loss of American lives, to be in itself an act of war. No longer the World War seemed 3000 miles away; the sinking of the "Lusitania" brought it home to us. On January 31, 1917, the German ambassador, Count von Bernstorff, informed our government that Germany would renew the sinking of merchant ships. Whereupon the President dismissed von Bernstorff, and broke off dealings with Germany. He hoped that this proof of readiness for war on our part might change Germany's method of warfare on the seas.

734. Who were the leading candidates for president in 1916, and what was the outcome?—735. What was Germany's announced naval policy, and how did it conflict with the rights of Americans? What great ocean going liner was sunk by the Germans, and when?

736. War.—Not only did Germany resume her submarine warfare more actively than ever, thus inflicting large losses, but she plotted to incite Mexico against us, promising to help Mexico to take from us Arizona,

A SCENE ON THE WESTERN FRONT.

Texas, and New Mexico if she would attack us. Germany hoped to sever Japan from the Allies and get her to join in this scheme. There was no choice; the United States was forced to declare war. And this we did on Good Friday, April 6, 1917.

737. War organization.—The people of the United States were wholly unprepared for war; the entire habit of their thought was opposed to it. Yet with wonderful speed and efficiency this nation organized and put in motion its war machinery. There was a conscription; 10,000,000 men between the ages of 21 and 30 were registered, and from them an army was

736. Summarize the causes that forced America to declare war. On what date was war declared?—737. Describe the condition in America at the outbreak of war, and what steps were taken to put the nation on a war-footing.

drawn. Billions were voted by Congress to carry on the war. Liberty Loans followed one another, subscribed to by people of large and small means, eager to lend to their government. All railroads were taken over by the government. Training camps as large as towns were at once built. Gigantic factories for supplies necessary to every branch of warfare were operating in an incredibly short time. Shipyards, airplane manufactories, rushed sea and air ships to the front. Food was put under government control, and the people willingly complied with regulations which cut down their accustomed comforts that our army and starving Europe might be fed. With submarines infesting the sea, the transporting of our army and supplies to France looked impossible. But the British had corked up the German navy at Kiel in 1915 and held it there. American and British destroyers policed the ocean and secured safe passage for our transports. Steadily our troops went over; vainly Germany strove to stop them. In the autumn of 1918, when the end came, we had 2,000,000 men under General Pershing in France. This transportation of an army under such conditions was a marvellous feat.

738. The Yanks are coming!—The first American soldiers to go across got there in time to keep the Fourth of July 1917 in Paris; there were only a few, just enough to show that we "were going over." The delay necessary for us to get enough men into France to help the Allies made their hearts heavy. Their endurance never failed, but it was strained to the utmost. In May, 1918, the Americans began to be felt, and from that hour Germany's fate was sealed. On May 27 the

738. About when did the first contingent of American troops reach France? On what date and where did the Germans make their third big drive?

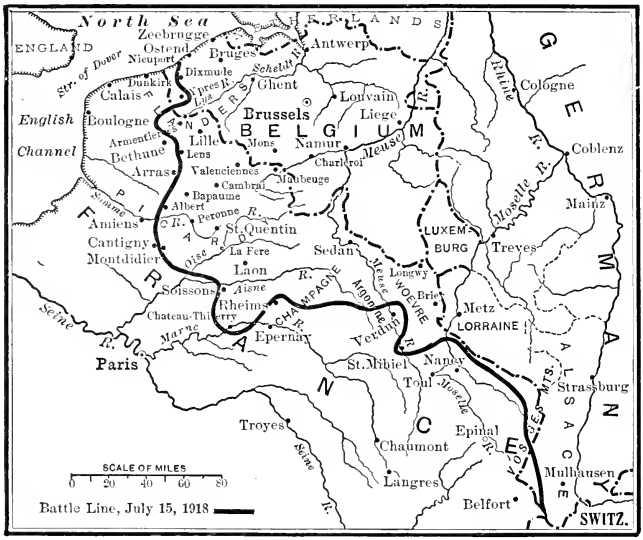
Germans began their third great drive. It was an attack upon the Chemin des Dames — "the Ladies' Road" — a ridge that ran west of Rheims. The next day the Americans took Cantigny, a small town which they held against Prussian strength. It was important only in showing what these newcomers could do. The Germans were again at the Marne, where their first check had been received four years before. They turned down the left bank of the Marne, and were but 42 miles from Paris, at Château-Thierry.

739. Château-Thierry.—The Second and Third Divisions of our army went to the top at Château-Thierry to cover the road to Paris. The exhausted French soldiers saw that in these lads of a few months' training the Kaiser's boasted troops had met their equals. On June 4th the spent French troops went back through our ranks, leaving the Americans to hold the front. The Germans charged on us, only to be met with the deadly fire of the Marines, every man a crack shot, whose aim never missed. The Germans fell before that deadly fusilade. "Devil-dogs," they called the Marines afterward. Never again was there talk of a German advance on Paris. General Foch knew that with the arrival of the splendidly equipped American soldiers the tables had been turned. His weary army was rescued; he had new strength behind him.

740. Belleau Wood: the aggressive.—With complete confidence the Americans followed their brilliant defence by an attack. There was a fight of several awful days in Belleau Wood. The Marines bayoneted the enemy out of a hard ground to capture, and held it by

738. What was the first town captured by the Americans? —739. Describe the attack by the Germans on Château-Thierry. What branch of the service was conspicuous in this defence?—740. Tell of the battle of Belleau Wood and the result.

the end of the week. In July the Germans began a drive all along the Allies' lines for miles. The French and Americans held so gloriously that the drive failed. In this drive the famous "Rainbow Division" of our army, made up of troops from all over the country, including the "old fighting 69th" of New York, the Irish



MAP OF THE WESTERN FRONT.

regiment, rechristened the 165th, won highest honor. On July 18 General Foch attacked the enemy, using every available American soldier. It was the second Battle of the Marne, a victory so complete that the German army barely escaped capture.

741. St. Quentin and the North.—While our boys with the French were doing such glorious deeds, the British and Americans were no less victorious farther north.

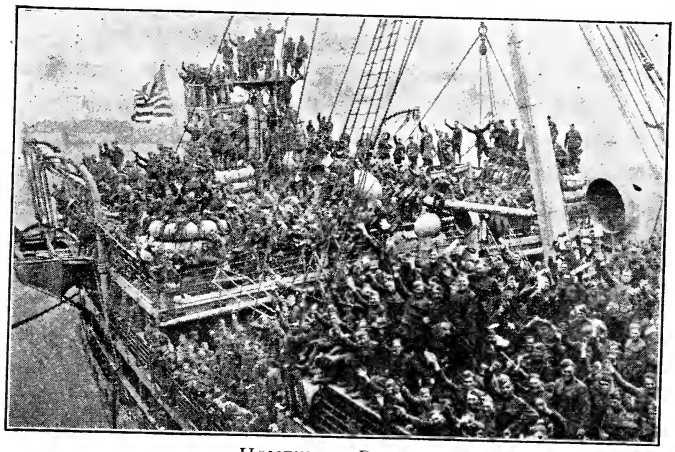
740. What Irish-Catholic regiment won distinction in the fighting during these days?—741. Tell of the fighting around St. Quentin, and what troops were especially engaged on the Allied side.

There was a time, before Foch took supreme command, when the Allied world was terror-stricken by crushing defeat in Picardy. It was feared that the Germans would take Calais and other British Channel points. But the British general Haig had ended that fear. Our Twenty-Seventh and Thirtieth Divisions fought with him. At St. Quentin our boys first smashed the boasted Hindenburg line. The Germans believed it invulnerable, but at St. Quentin von Hindenburg was defeated. In September our troops began a drive in a region intrusted to them around St. Mihiel, extending from the Meuse river to the Argonne forest. They fought a slow, desperate battle; the Germans yielding foot by foot, for they knew what defeat would mean. It cost us heavy toll of life, but Americans fought as resolutely as Germans, with that cheerful courage that was so amazing. They pushed their way through the Argonne forest till they held 10,000 German prisoners. Before them lay open country, with Sedan ready for their taking, where, in 1870, the French emperor had been forced to yield to the grandfather of Kaiser William II.

742. The War in the East: the Holy Land.—While General Foch was winning in the West he was organizing victories in the East. Syria, Damascus, Aleppo, were taken by the English. A French general, d'Esperey, conquered Bulgaria. Thus the Suez Canal was safe, and the entrance to Germany from the East laid open. But, most important of all, was the wonderful fact that, after centuries of occupancy, the Turk was driven from the Holy Land. The English general Allenby took Palestine, entered Jerusalem, its conqueror.

741. Describe the part the American troops played in the battle of the Argonne.—742. With what success did the Allied troops meet in the East?

743. The End.—In the meantime Italy was attacking and conquering Germany's chief ally, Austria. In October, 1917, the Italians put the Austrians to rout at the Piave River. They fled, leaving thousands of prisoners in the Italians' hands. With the fall of Austria, following Turkey's fall, Germany stood alone. President Wilson was approached by the German chan-



HOMEWARD BOUND!

cellor, Prince Max, for terms of an armistice. The President referred him to General Foch and the Allied Council. On November 8th the German delegates came to receive General Foch's terms. They were practically unconditional surrender. Germany had no choice but to accept whatever terms the Allies allowed her. On November 10th the Kaiser and his followers fled to Holland. On November 11, 1918, the armistice was signed. The troops from the New World, fresh and dauntless, had turned the tide and won for the

743. Describe what transpired just previous to the signing of the armistice. When was the armistice signed?

world the safety of Democracy in which all Americans believe.

744. The Peace Conference: the Treaty.—President Wilson went to Paris to sit at the Peace Conference which met to discuss a permanent peace, and to draw up the Peace Treaty. Before the Conference opened he went to England and to Italy. He was everywhere received with the highest honors as the leader of the nation that had saved liberty. In Rome the President was received by the Holy Father, Benedict XV. The saintly Pope, Pius X, had died in the early weeks of the war, broken-hearted. His successor had made three attempts to bring about peace, with justice to all. He now received the President as the head of the great nation which had ended the war which had wrung his heart. The Peace Conference met in Paris, the French premier, Clemenceau, presiding. President Wilson stood for a League of Nations that should secure permanent peace. He returned to the United States for the closing of the sixty-fifth, the "War Congress," then sailed back to France to conclude the terms of the Treaty. There was great opposition to this treaty when it was laid before the people at home. Many held that its terms endangered the Monroe Doctrine. It was not ratified in this country at the beginning of 1920, although it had been signed by the Allies.

745. Catholics in the War.—As in every previous war, the Catholic citizens of the United States proved their loyalty to their country in the World War. The Knights of Columbus did incalculable service; they used their own funds to establish and carry on welfare work among the soldiers. The Catholic National War Coun-

744. Tell of the trip of President Wilson to Europe to attend the Peace Conference. What great covenant was written at this conference?

cil was organized to help in this and other war work. Over 1500 priests served as Army and Navy chaplains under the Most Rev. Patrick J. Hayes, Archbishop of New York, who had been appointed Bishop Ordinary of United States Army and Navy chaplains by the Holy Father. Fifteen of these chaplains died in the service. Among the chaplains decorated for courage were Chaplain Duffy of the old New York 69th, now 165th Regiment, and Chaplain Kelly. Generals O'Brien and Drum are Catholics; Admiral Benson who served as military head and Chief-of-Staff for the Navy, is a Catholic convert. Both Charles M. Schwab, who came to the rescue of shipbuilding in its dire need, and saved it from being a tragic failure, and Edward Hurley, the other war shipbuilder, are Catholics. Another Catholic, John B. Ryan, took hold of airplane construction when it was far behind its schedule, and at once made it a success. Joyce Kilmer, the poet, a zealous Catholic convert, was killed while leading his men in the great German drive, near the Ourcq. Thus, and in many other glorious instances as well, have Catholics proved their loyalty to the flag. Foch, the greatest French general of his time, supreme in command over the Allied forces, is a Catholic of whose devotion and faith many true and beautiful anecdotes are told.

In October, 1919, Cardinal Mercier, the learned, saintly, and heroic primate of Belgium, who held his little country to her martyrdom and himself faced death unfalteringly, came to America to bring his people's gratitude to us for fighting for them, but still more for saving them from starvation. Everywhere he went

745. What part did the clergy play in the World War? Mention some Catholic laymen who helped America, and tell what each did. Who was in supreme command of the Allied forces?

great crowds of every faith, and of no faith, hailed him, recognizing him as a saint and a hero.

746. The Eighteenth Amendment.—The Prohibitionists have long aimed at national prohibition of the manufacture and sale of liquor. The measure was carried, and the Eighteenth Amendment of the Constitution ratified in 1919. It forbids the manufacture, importation, or transportation of intoxicating liquor in the United States.

Topics for Review:—

Federal Reserve Banks—Mexican Troubles—The World War—The causes which led the United States into the World War—War—Château-Thierry—Belleau Wood: the aggressive—St. Quentin and the North—The End—The Peace Conference: the Treaty—Catholics in the War—The Eighteenth Amendment.

745. What great Catholic primate of Belgium came to America in October, 1919, and how was he received?—746. What is the Eighteenth Amendment?

CHAPTER XLI.

The Growth of Our Country.

747. A hundred and fifty years ago.—It is a hundred and fifty years ago that the United States of America declared themselves free and independent. At the time of the Declaration of Independence the Union consisted of thirteen States, covering an area of about 800,000 square miles, with a population, according to the first census of 1790, of less than 4,000,000.

748. The boundaries of the United States, as fixed by treaty with Great Britain, were: the Atlantic Ocean, the Gulf of Mexico, the Mississippi River, and the Great Lakes. Florida was not included, as it belonged to Spain, nor was the part of Louisiana east of the Mississippi.

749. Increase of population.—In 1840 the population had increased more than fourfold, reaching over 17,000,000, while the census of 1920 shows a population in the forty-eight States and the Territories of about 107,000,000, extending over an area of 3,846,000 square miles.

750. The increase in population, while partly the result of natural growth, is due mainly to immigration. How the enlarged area was acquired may be learned from the following: Louisiana was purchased from France in 1803, and Florida from Spain in 1821; Texas, which was independent, joined the Union in 1845; Upper California, which embraced what is now known as California, Nevada, Arizona, Utah, and parts of Kansas, Wyoming, Colorado, and New Mexico, was ceded to us in 1848 by

747. What was the area of the United States in 1776? What was the population in 1790?—748. Give the boundaries of the United States as fixed by treaty with Great Britain.—749. To what had the population and area increased in 1840?

Mexico; Alaska was purchased in 1867 from Russia and later territory as related in preceding chapters. (See pages 249 and 253.)

751. The progress of our country has not been confined to its territorial growth; it has also shown a wonderful development in the line of inventions, in its commercial relations, its mining interests, its agricultural products, and its various industries. Once of no importance as a producer, the world now turns to it for breadstuffs, beef, pork, and other provisions. Its sugar production, too, is large and its tobacco crop greater than that of any other country.

752. Inventive genius.—The United States has also developed great inventive genius, many of the most wonderful labor-saving devices and valuable discoveries springing from the fertile brains of its sons.

753. The cotton-gin.—The cotton-gin, a machine for cleaning cotton from the seed, was invented by Eli Whitney, of Massachusetts, in 1793. By this machine one man can clean a thousand pounds of cotton in a day, whereas prior to this invention he could not exceed a pound a day. The difference in our exports brought about by this machine will be best understood by learning that while we shipped about 3000 *pounds* of cotton to Europe in 1784 we now send millions of *bales* of 500 pounds each every year. From the cotton-seed, which was formerly burned or thrown away, an oil is now extracted which is extensively used as a substitute for olive oil, for making soap, and for other purposes, and $50,000,000 are invested in the manufacture of its products.

750. How was the increased area acquired?—753. What is the cotton-gin? How much cotton can one man clean by it in a day? To what uses is the cotton-seed oil now put?

754. The steamboat and the railroad.—The steamboat may be said to be of American invention, for though several attempts to construct it were made in other countries none was successful till Robert Fulton built the "Clermont" in 1807, and the first steamship to cross the Atlantic was the "Savannah," which sailed from Savannah, Georgia, in 1819. The steam-carriage was invented in England, but the first practical *railroad* was begun here in 1828. It is estimated that there are now over two hundred and fifty thousand miles of railroads in this country.

755. The telegraph.—The electro-magnetic telegraph, the first invention to bring distant points in almost immediate communication, was first successfully completed by Samuel F. B. Morse, a native of Charlestown, Massachusetts; and its twin-sister, the Atlantic cable, by which the Old World and the New can instantly communicate, was conceived and carried to success by Cyrus W. Field, of New York.

756. The telephone.—Another American invention, even more wonderful than the telegraph, is the telephone, which enables persons miles apart to *speak* to one another.

757. Electricity.—The phonograph.—The adaptation of electricity to every-day use, especially in electric lighting, is another of the inventions of our age. Many of the improvements in this line are due to Thomas A. Edison, a native of Ohio. He is also the inventor of the phonograph, a marvellous instrument, which records sounds in such a manner that they can be exactly re-

754. When was the first successful steamboat built? What was the first steamship to cross the Atlantic? When and where was the first practical railroad begun?—755. What can you tell about the electro-magnetic telegraph? What about the Atlantic cable?—756. What is the telephone?

produced at some future time. Thus the tones of the human voice or the notes of a musical instrument can be preserved any length of time.

758. The reaping-machine.—Among the thousands of labor-saving devices planned by Americans mention may be made of two which have completely revolutionized old methods, namely, the sewing-machine, first successfully made and patented in 1846 by Elias Howe, and the reaping-machine, invented by Cyrus H. McCormick, of Virginia. Of this latter machine William H. Seward said in 1859: "Owing to Mr. McCormick's invention the line of civilization moves westward thirty miles each year."

759. The gas engine.—The automobile.—The invention of the gas engine, considerably later than the steam engine, made it possible to run heavy vehicles by their own power on common and rough roads, without tracks, over mountains. The gas engine is run by a succession of explosions, combustion within itself. It carries its own liquid fuel, is incomparably lighter than a steam engine. Hence automobile—*i.e.* self-moving—vehicles became possible. Though this is not an American invention, the manufacture of motor cars has grown to immense proportions in this country. American inventive genius has transformed them. An American produced a car uniting lightness with strength, sold at a price within the limit of small incomes. Cheapness has brought the motor car and truck into universal use, superseding horses, uniting distant points, making work and transportation in his own motor possible to the comparatively poor man, thus transforming country life.

757. What is the phonograph? Who invented it?—758. By whom was the first successful sewing-machine made? Who invented the reaping-machine? What was said of it by William H. Seward?—759. What effect has the automobile had on transportation?

760. The airplane.—The airplane is an American invention. It was experimented upon by several people, but it was first produced in working form by the Wright brothers of Dayton, Ohio, and patented by them in 1906. From this beginning great strides in improving the first machine have been made. During the World War the United States built thousands of airplanes, and in the year that the war ended, 1918, a regular mail delivery air route was established. An American Naval airplane made the first trans-Atlantic flight from Newfoundland to the Azores, then to Portugal and England, in May, 1919.

761. Wireless telegraphy.—The submarine.—Marconi, an Italian, is the inventor of wireless telegraphy. But since its invention it has been improved and adapted by other inventors. The submarine was invented by an Irish immigrant, who came to this country in 1868 and taught a parochial school in Paterson, N. J. His name was John Patrick Holland. On St. Patrick's Day, 1898, he gave a public test in New York harbor of his submarine's diving powers. This vessel, which bore its inventor's name—the Holland No. 9—proved that it could do all that was claimed for it; it not only could dive, but it could stay under water a week without harm to its crew. The Navy Department of our government bought Holland's patent for $150,000 in 1900. The invention of the iron-clad "Monitor," which in the Civil War revolutionized sea fighting, had no greater effect upon warfare than did the submarine. The World War has made the world realize the truth of this. An inventor named Simon Lake invented another type of submarine vessel.

760. Who invented the airplane?—761. What do you understand by wireless telegraphy? What has the World War taught us in regard to the submarine?

762. Our Exports.—In 1918 the exports of the United States amounted to $5,919,111,371, and in 1919 they reached the sum of $7,225,084,257. These figures need no comment to prove to what tremendous proportions the production of the country has attained. This amount does not include the gold and silver sent abroad; the most of these precious metals in the world being found in the rich mines of our country. Rich as they are, they do not, however, compare in value with the iron and coal mines of Pennsylvania and other States. Yet, strange as it may now appear, when hard coal was first discovered in 1790 it was thought to be too hard to burn and was used for mending roads, in place of stone.

763. Such, in brief, has been the material progress of the United States in a hundred and fifty years. Let us now consider its religious growth.

CHAPTER XLII.

The Growth of the Church.

764. The first diocese of the United States. — Catholicity is not new to our land. The Church set her foot on our soil and raised a cross here almost in the lifetime of Columbus. The first worship of Almighty God in about half of our States was Catholic. But with the advent of Protestant England came bitter enmity to Catholic faith, persecution, and political disabilities. It was not until the close of the Revolution that the Church became free and independent. Then the diocese of Baltimore was created, and from that fruitful mother sprung the present great Church of the United States. Nowhere

762. What was the amount of exports for the years 1918 and 1919?

in the history of the Church has such a development been seen. A little more than a century ago, when Dr. Carroll was created first bishop of the United States, there was no bishop nearer to him than Quebec on the north and Havana on the south. The bishop of Baltimore stood alone, with about thirty priests, perhaps fifteen churches, no cathedral, no seminary, no college, no school, not an asylum nor a hospital, with not a single house of religious men or women.

CARDINAL MCCLOSKEY.

765. Increased Catholic population.—At the beginning of the year 1920 the Catholics of the United States numbered more than seventeen millions.

766. Four Cardinals.—The Holy See has been pleased to honor our country by the appointment of four cardinals, beginning with Cardinal McCloskey on March 15, 1875, Cardinal Gibbons, June 7, 1886, and Cardinals Farley and O'Connell, both raised to the same dignity on November 27, 1911. Cardinal McCloskey died October 10, 1885, and Cardinal Farley in 1918.

767. Catholic immigration.—The great increase of Catholicity in the United States came by immigration from Ireland, Germany, France, Poland, and Italy. After the Revolution immigration was steady but not

765. What was the number of Catholics in the United States at the beginning of the year 1913?—766. What four cardinals have been appointed for the United States?—767. What was the cause of the great increase of Catholicity in the United States?

large, but with the close of the French Revolution and the succeeding wars, when Europe began to stagger under the burden of taxes, men turned their eyes toward this country as a refuge and a home, and since that time have been coming over in vast numbers until in the decade between 1900 and 1910 the flood of immigration reached its height. The outbreak of the great World War almost entirely stopped this immigration to the New World, which cannot resume its old proportions till the wounds of Europe are partly healed.

CARDINAL GIBBONS.

MOTHER SETON.

768. Our seminaries.—Another fertile source of the growth of the Church are the seminaries which have arisen in various parts of the country, hives from which issue young, well-trained, and zealous priests, who not only encourage love for our Mother among her sons, but bring the light to those outside her family.

769. Our religious orders.—The religious orders, too, have contributed in no small way to the increase of Catholicity among us: the Society of Jesus, the Au-

768. Name another fertile source of the growth of the Church.

gustinians, the Dominicans, the Redemptorists, the Benedictines, the Franciscans, Capuchins, Lazarists, Passionists, Sulpicians, Oblates, Carmelites, Priests of the Holy Cross, of the Precious Blood, and the Fathers of the Holy Ghost.

770. Sisters and Brothers.—The Church owes a great deal to Mrs. Elizabeth Seton and the Sisters of Charity; to the Visitation nuns; to the Ursulines, the oldest religious teachers in the country; to the Ladies of the Sacred Heart, the Presentation Nuns, the Sisters of St. Francis, of St. Dominic, of St. Benedict, of St. Agnes, of Loretto, of Christian Charity, the School-Sisters of Notre Dame, the Sisters of the Holy Child Jesus, of the Precious Blood, of Divine Providence, of the Holy Cross, of St. Joseph, of Notre Dame, of Providence, of Mercy, and of the Good Shepherd; to the Brothers of the Christian Schools, of Mary, of the Holy Cross, of St. Francis, and many others.

771. The heroism, devotion, and self-sacrifice shown on the battle-field in our wars and during the times of pestilence and fever by the members of the different Sisterhoods, as well as by our priests, have had much to do with lessening the ignorant prejudice felt against the Church. Another reason, too, is that she is beginning to be known, for her sons are found in every rank of life: moulding public opinion in our periodicals and daily papers; among the great educators, philosophers, reviewers, men of science, mathematicians, astronomers, and military geniuses.

772. Councils of the Church.—Mention has already been made (see ¶ 484) of the First Provincial Council

769. Can you tell of something else that has contributed in no small way to the increase of Catholicity?—770. To whom is the Church greatly indebted?—771. What has had much to do with lessening the prejudice felt against the Church?

of Baltimore; but as there is no greater evidence than these councils of the progress of Catholicity in our land it may be well to consider them more particularly.

773. The Church holds three kinds of councils: a Provincial Council, which is assembled in a province by an archbishop; a Plenary or National Council, in which several archbishops with their suffragan, or assistant, bishops take part; and an Ecumenical, or general, Council, to which the Holy Father summons the bishops of the whole world.

774. The First Provincial Council of Baltimore was followed by other councils, about once in every four years until 1849. There was also a council at Oregon in 1848.

775. In 1852 the First Plenary Council was held at Baltimore, at which Most Rev. Francis Patrick Kenrick, Archbishop of Baltimore, presided, assisted by the Most Rev. Archbishops of Oregon, St. Louis, New York, and Cincinnati, and twenty bishops of the United States, with the Abbot of the Trappists and the superiors of the several male religious orders and congregations.

776. Following this, at intervals, were provincial councils in Baltimore, New York, Cincinnati, St. Louis, and New Orleans. The Acts and Decrees of these councils were revised and extended in the Second Plenary Council of Baltimore, held in 1866 under the great Archbishop Spalding. With him sat in council six archbishops, thirty-seven bishops, two abbots, and the superiors of fourteen orders or congregations.

777. Since that great gathering of the prelates of the Church in the United States there have been provincial

772. What can you tell of the Councils?—773. How many kinds of councils are there?—774. When was the First Provincial Council held?—775. When was the First Plenary Council? The second? The third?

councils in various cities, and, finally, the Third Plenary Council of Baltimore met in the mother cathedral church of that city in November, 1884, fifty-five years after the meeting of the first provincial synod in the same venerable walls.

778. What a contrast between the two assemblages! At the first one archbishop, five bishops, and one administrator met; at the latter thirteen provinces and fifty-seven dioceses were represented, among them the province of Cardinal McCloskey, then Archbishop of New York, who was born when Archbishop Carroll alone wore the mitre in this country, without another bishop to share his labors.

779. Few as were the prelates at the earlier councils, three famous lawyers, who were invited to one of them to give opinions on matters of civil law, were so deeply impressed by the grave and solemn sessions of a Catholic council that all spoke of it as one which had impressed them more deeply than any body of men before whom they had ever appeared.

780. That the Church may continue to spread, and our beloved country to prosper and increase, is the earnest wish of every American Catholic heart.

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

ADOPTED BY CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776.

A declaration by the representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled.

When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of Nature and of Nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident: That all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and accordingly all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer while evils are sufferable than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world:

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and when so suspended he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature,—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the repository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large, for their exercise; the State remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone, for the tenure of their offices and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies without the consent of our legislatures.

He has effected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops amongst us:

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States:

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our consent:

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury:

For transporting us beyond seas, to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring prov-

ince, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies:

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the forms of our governments:

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy, scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms: our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A Prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our migration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them by the ties of our common kindred to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind—enemies in war; in peace, friends.

WE, therefore, the representatives of THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare that these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, FREE AND INDEPENDENT STATES; that they are absolved

from all allegiance to the British Crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

[The foregoing declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed, and signed by the following members:]

JOHN HANCOCK.

New Hampshire.

JOSIAH BARTLETT.
WM. WHIPPLE,
MATTHEW THORNTON.

Massachusetts Bay.

SAMUEL ADAMS.
JOHN ADAMS.
ROBERT TREAT PAINE.
ELBRIDGE GERRY.

Rhode Island.

STEPHEN HOPKINS.
WILLIAM ELLERY.

Connecticut.

ROGER SHERMAN.
SAMUEL HUNTINGTON.
WILLIAM WILLIAMS.
OLIVER WOLCOTT.

New York.

WM. FLOYD.
PHILIP LIVINGSTON.
FRANCIS LEWIS.
LEWIS MORRIS.

New Jersey.

RICHARD STOCKTON.
JOHN WITHERSPOON.
FRANCIS HOPKINSON.
JOHN HART.
ABRAHAM CLARK.

Pennsylvania.

ROBERT MORRIS.
BENJAMIN RUSH.
BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.
JOHN MORTON.
GEORGE CLYMER.
JAMES SMITH.
GEORGE TAYLOR.
JAMES WILSON.
GEORGE ROSS.

Delaware.

CÆSAR RODNEY.
GEORGE READ.
THOMAS M'KEAN.

Maryland.

SAMUEL CHASE.
WILLIAM PACA.
THOMAS STONE.
CHARLES CARROLL of Carrollton.

Virginia.

GEORGE WYTHE.
RICHARD HENRY LEE.
THOMAS JEFFERSON.
BENJAMIN HARRISON.
THOMAS NELSON, Jun.
FRANCIS LIGHTFOOT LEE.
CARTER BRAXTON.

North Carolina.

WILLIAM HOOPER.
JOSEPH HEWES.
JOHN PENN.

South Carolina.

EDWARD RUTLEDGE.
THOMAS HEYWARD, Jun.
THOMAS LYNCH, Jun.
ARTHUR MIDDLETON.

Georgia.

BUTTON GWINNETT.
LYMAN HALL.
GEORGE WALTON.

No.	States.	SETTLED.			Admitted.
		When.	Where.	By whom.	
1	Virginia.	1607	Jamestown,	English.	1776
2	New York.	1623	New York.	Dutch.	"
3	Massachusetts.	1620	Plymouth.	English.	"
4	New Hampshire.	1623	Little Harbor.	"	"
5	Connecticut.	1633	Windsor.	"	"
6	Maryland.	1634	St. Mary's.	"	"
7	Rhode Island.	1636	Providence.	"	"
8	Delaware.	1638	Christiana, near Wilmington.	Swedes.	"
9	North Carolina.	1653	Albemarle.	English.	"
10	New Jersey.	1617	Bergen.	Dutch.	"
11	South Carolina.	1670	Ashley River.	English.	"
12	Pennsylvania.	1682	Philadelphia.	"	"
13	Georgia.	1733	Savannah.	"	"
14	Vermont.	1724	Fort Dummer.	"	1791
15	Kentucky.	1769	Booneville.	"	1792
16	Tennessee.	1757	Fort Loudoun.	"	1796
17	Ohio.	1788	Marietta.	"	1802
18	Louisiana.	1699	Iberville.	French.	1812
19	Indiana.	1702	Vincennes.	"	1816
20	Mississippi.	1716	Natchez.	"	1817
21	Illinois.	1682	Cahokia.	"	1818
22	Alabama.	1702	Mobile.	"	1819
23	Maine.	1625	Bristol.	"	1820
24	Missouri.	1719	Fort Orleans.	"	1821
25	Arkansas.	1690	Little Rock.	"	1836
26	Michigan.	1685	Detroit.	"	1837
27	Florida.	1565	St. Augustine.	Spaniards.	1845
28	Texas.	1692	San Antonio.	"	1845
29	Iowa.	1833	Dubuque.	Americans.	1846
30	Wisconsin.	1669	Green Bay.	French.	1848
31	California.	1769	San Diego.	Spaniards.	1850
32	Minnesota.	1819	Fort Snelling.	Americans.	1858
33	Oregon.	1811	Astoria.	"	1859
34	Kansas.			"	1861
35	West Virginia.			English.	1863
36	Nevada.			Americans.	1864
37	Nebraska.			"	1867
38	Colorado.			"	1876
39	North Dakota.			English.	1889
40	South Dakota.			Americans.	1889
41	Montana.			"	1889
42	Washington.			"	1889
43	Idaho.			"	1890
44	Wyoming.			"	1890
45	Utah.			"	1896
46	Oklahoma.			"	1907
47	New Mexico.			Spaniards.	1912
48	Arizona.			"	1912

TERRITORIES OF THE UNITED STATES.

Territories.	Whence taken.
Alaska.	Russian America.
District of Columbia.	Maryland and Virginia.
Hawaii.	
Phillippine Islands.	Spain.
Porto Rico.	"

PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES.

No.	Name.	State.	In Office.	Born.	Died.
1	George Washington.	Virginia.	1789–1797	1732	1799
2	John Adams.	Massachusetts.	1797–1801	1735	1826
3	Thomas Jefferson.	Virginia.	1801–1809	1743	1826
4	James Madison.	Virginia.	1809–1817	1751	1836
5	James Monroe.	Virginia.	1817–1825	1758	1831
6	John Quincy Adams.	Massachusetts.	1825–1829	1767	1848
7	Andrew Jackson.	Tennessee.	1829–1837	1767	1845
8	Martin Van Buren.	New York.	1837–1841	1782	1862
9	Wm. Henry Harrison.	Ohio.	1841–1 mo.	1773	1841
10	John Tyler.	Virginia.	1841–1845	1790	1862
11	James Knox Polk.	Tennessee.	1845–1849	1795	1849
12	Zachary Taylor.	Louisiana.	1849–1850	1784	1850
13	Millard Fillmore.	New York.	1850–1853	1800	1874
14	Franklin Pierce.	New Hampshire.	1853–1857	1804	1869
15	James Buchanan.	Pennsylvania.	1857–1861	1791	1868
16	Abraham Lincoln.	Illinois.	1861–1865	1809	1865
17	Andrew Johnson.	Tennessee.	1865–1869	1808	1875
18	Ulysses S. Grant.	Illinois.	1869–1877	1822	1885
19	Rutherford B. Hayes.	Ohio.	1877–1881	1822	1893
20	James A. Garfield.	Ohio.	1881–4 mo.	1831	1881
21	Chester A. Arthur.	New York.	1881–1885	1830	1886
22	Grover Cleveland.	New York.	1885–1889	1837	1908
23	Benjamin Harrison.	Indiana.	1889–1893	1833	1901
24	Grover Cleveland.	New York.	1893–1897	1837	1908
25	William McKinley.	Ohio.	1897–1901	1843	1901
26	Theodore Roosevelt.	New York.	1901–1909	1858	1919
27	William H. Taft.	Ohio.	1909–1913	1857	
28	Woodrow Wilson.	Virginia.	1913–	1856	

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 011 528 350 9